

1010.

The Birth

of mankynde, other:
wylse named the wo-
mans booke.

Su Guillielmi Ward. lbr.
Newly set foorth, corrected, and
augmented. whose con-
tentess ye may reade in
the Table of the
booke, and
most
plainely in the
prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde
Phisition.



see ward

This is Dr. Henry's Good Professor of English in this university.
 The written notes are probably his own or may be of his for his own use.



Let it some Art-
 starchus may per-
 happes find some
 lacke of faithful-
 nes & diligence in
 this woork: yet
 there is none so
 froward to deny,
 but that there is
 some fruite & pro-
 fite to be founde
 therein, seeing
 that it commeth

nowe abrode much more enlarged & encreased, &
 more diligently corrected then it was before ey-
 ther in the Latine or in the English. And where
 before in the other printes, there lacked matter
 necessarie to the openyng and declaration of the
 fygures parteyning to the inner parts: it is now
 so playnely set forth, that the simplest mydwife
 which can reade, may both vnderstande for her
 better instruction, & also other women that haue
 need of her helpe, the more commoditie. Where-

fore my desyre is, that it may be receyued and
 practised of mydwifes and all other ma-
 trones, with no lesse successe, then it
 is with good wyll and desyre

wrytten to pro-
 fite,

and to do good
 to other.

The Table of this present Booke.



Viz. a Prologue
to the women
readers.

In this .i. Cha-
piter is briefly
declared the co-
ntentes of the
first Booke.

Capit. i.

In howe many
coates the bo-
dy is lapped or
inuolued Cap.

ii.

Fol. i.

Here is declared what the Muscles be. Cap. iii.

Fol. iiii.

Of the Bell, called Peritoneum.

Cap. iiii.

Fol. v.

The declaration of the names and nature of
the Matrix. Cap. v.

Fol. vi.

Of the wombe & his partes. Cap. vi.

Fol. vii.

Of the mother port. Cap. vii.

Fol. x.

Of the vesselles of seede, called the stones, with
other thereto apparteynyng.

Cap. viii.

Fol. xi.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

eodem.

Of the office and ble of these seede bryngers.

Cap. x.

Fol. xiiii.

Of the way by the whiche the seede is sent from
the stones, to the angles or corners of the ma-
trix. Cap. xi.

Fol. xix.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in
women. Cap. xii.

Fol. xxi.

for Burning or

All sores.

Of

Take small soaps & first apply it to the place sore, then at
next day apply mince Unguentum album wth the soaps &
apply it to the sores, it will heale it. m. b. a. n.

This booke in any case is good to be don't & every body.

The Table.

Of the baines which relont to the Matrix, and the partes thereof. Item of the Termes and theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap. riii. fol. xxiij.

Of the thre calls or wrappers wherein the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii. fol. xxix.

Which of the thre Matrix baines containe the Termes, and how the milke commeth to the womans breastes. Cap. xv. fol. xxxv.

The declaration by letters of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye euery part in woman mentioned in this booke before.

Of the fyrst figure. fol. xliij.

Of the seconde figure. fol. xlv.

Of the thirde figure. fol. xlvij.

The fourth figure. fol. xlvij.

The fyfth figure. fol. xlix.

The sixth figure. eodem.

The vii. viii. and. ix. figures. fol. l.

The Table of the seconde Booke.

Of the tyme of birth, and which is called natural or vnnatural. Cap. i. fol. li.

Of easy and vneasy, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, & the causes of it, with the signes howe to know & foresee the same. Cap. ii. fol. liij.

Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue harde



The Table.

2

harde labour. Cap.iii fol. lviij.

Remedies and medicines by the whiche the labour may be made tollerable, easie, and without great payne. Cap. iiii. fol. lxxii.

Howe the secondine or seconde birth shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. b.

Howe many thynges chaunce, to the women
after theyr labour, & how to auoyde, defende,
oz to remedie the same. Cap. vii. fol. lxxiii.

Of abortiuentes or untimely birthes; and the
causes of it, and by what remedies it may be
defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. lviij. fol. lxxxiij.

Of dead birthes, and by what signes or tokens
it may be knowen, by what meanes it may
also be expelled. Cap. ix. fol. xc.

In the last Chapter of this booke be breefly re-
sited certayne expert medicines, whiche be
most requisite to the cheefe purpose intended.

¶ The thynde Booke.

IN this first Chapter
of this third booke
is first declared the
matters therein co-
tained, & then how
the Infant newly
borne must be han-
dled, nourished, and
looked to. Cap. i.
folio. xcviij.

Q iii



of water
off the face
dries on
ground more
by means
of heat +
fresh air
passing over
surface.
water is
falsely
probable

ten

The Table.

Of the Nurse, and her mylke, and how long the
chylde shoulde sucke. Capit. ii. fol. C.

Of divers diseases & infirmities which chaunce
to chyl dren lately bozne, and the remedies
therefore. Cap. iii. fol. Ciii.

Of the fluxe and ouermuch loosenes of the belly
Chapt. iiii. fol. Ciiii.

To vnloose the chylde, being bounde. fol. Cb.

Remedie for the cough and distillation oꝝ ca-
tarrhes of the head. fol. Cbi.

Remedie for short wynde. fol. Cbi.

Agaynst wheales oꝝ bladders on the tong. eodem.

Of excoriation oꝝ clefture, chapping oꝝ ch-
nyng of the mouth. fol. Cbi.

Of apostumatation and runnyng of the eares.
fol. eodem.

Of apostumatation in the head. fol. Cix.

Of the swelling oꝝ bolning of the eyes. eodem.

Of the scumme oꝝ wythe of the eye. eodem.

Agaynst immoderate heate of the feuer. eodem.

Agaynst frettyng oꝝ gnawynge in the belly.

Folio. Cr.

Agaynst dwelling of the body. eodem.

Agaynst often sneesynge. eodem.

Of welkes in the body, and the cure. fol. Cxi.

Agaynst swelling of the coddies. eodem.

Agaynst swelling of the Nauyll. eodem.

Agaynst vnsleepynesse. fol. Cxii.

Agaynst peryng oꝝ the hyckate. eodem.

Agaynst often parbreakeynge by weakenesse and
feebleness of the stomache. fol. Cxiii.

Agaynst fearful & terrible dreames. fol. Cxiii.
Agaynst

The Table.

3

Agaynst issuing forth of the fundement gutte.

Folio. *fol. 101* eodem.

Agaynst Tenasitus. eodem.

Agaynst wormes in the belly. eodem.

Of chafyng or gallyng of any place of the bodye.

Folio. *fol. 102* Crvi.

Of the falling sicknesse. eodem.

Consumption or pyning away of the body.

Folio. *fol. 103* Crvii.

Of lassitude, wearinesse, or heauinesse of the

chylides body. eodem.

Of trembling of the body, or of certaine members

of the body, called the palsy. Fol. Crviii.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stopping of

the brine. *fol. 104*

Of gogle eyes, or looking a squint. Fol. Crx.

fol. 105

The fourth booke.

fol. 106



If suche thynges the

whiche shalbe entrea-

ted of in this fourth

booke. Cap. i. fol. Cr.

Of conception, & how

many wayes it may

be hindzed or letted.

Cap. ii. fol. eodem.

Howe many wayes

conception may be

letted, & how the cau-

ses may be knowen.

Cap. iii.

Fol. Crxi.

Howe

for to expell royns.
Take oryns cutt them in quarters, pick the most
cleane out, & put 3 quarters upon a thread, & hang
them up in the chimney to dry, being well dryed

The Table.

Howe to knowe whether lacke of conception be
of the woman or of the man, and howe it may
be perceiued whether she be conceaued or no.

Cap. iiii. fol. Cxxiii.

Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche
may further the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.

fol. Cxxiiii.

Of diuers belesifying receiptes. fol. Cxxv.

Of the causes and remedies for dandruffe of the
head. fol. Cxxvi.

To take away heere from places where it is un-
seemly. fol. Cxxvii.

To do away freckens or other spottes in the face.
fol. Cxxviii.

To destroy wartes and suche lyke excrescences on
the face, or els where. eodem.

To cleare and claryfye the skynne in the handes,
face, or other part of the body. fol. eodem.

To souple and molitie the ruggednesse of the
skynne. fol. Cxxix.

Agaynst todayne ryllynges of pynples through
unkind heate in the face, or els where. eodem.

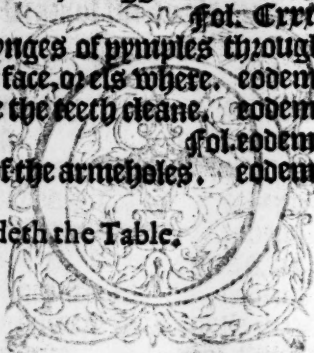
To keepe and preserve the teeth cleane. eodem.

Of stinking breath. fol. eodem.

Of the ranke sauour of the armeholes. eodem.

¶ Here endeth the Table.

Esqut quum auct
ed quum notat
unus quod auct
notat quod auct
quod auct
quod auct



quod auct

A Prologue to the women readers.



Ye in the begynnyng
of this presente Pro-
logue, I wil folow the
example of them, whi-
che when they bid any
ghestes to diner oz sup-
per, are wont fyrst to
declare what shall be
their cheare, what fare,
and howe many dishes
they shall haue, pray-
yng them to take it in good woorth, and to looke
for neyther better ne worse then hath been men-
tioned of: And euen so here wyl I doo. Before
that ye enter into the readyng of this little trea-
tise, I shall succinctly & in fewe wordes resite the
summe & cheefe contentes of the same, with the
utilitie and profyte which may ensue to the dili-
gent and attentife ouerreader thereof, to the ende
that ye of these thinges beyng fyrst well aduerti-
sed, may haue the more oz lesse courage to em-
ploy your labour in ouerlokyng and perusyng of
the same. For commonly it doth occasionate any
man to be the more prompt, redy, and wyllyng
to take payne, when he is assured oz certified of
the profyte, purpose, and fruite thereof comming,
and lyke wyle it is a great pricke oz allurement,
entysyng and mouing a man to reade any booke,
when he is some what fyrste admonished of the
matters comprehended and contayned therein.

Wherefore now to come to our purpose, ye

Bi

shall

The entere
of the auc-
tour.

The Prologue.

The more
part of this
booke tran-
slated into
Englishe
three or four
yeres past.

The name of
this booke.

W^{ill} vnderstande that about thre or foure yeres
past, a certayne studious and diligent clarke,
at the requeste and desyre of diuers honeste and
sadde matrones, beyng of his acquayntaunce,
dyd translate out of Latine into Englishe a great
parte of this booke, entitulyng it accordyng to
the Latine inscription De partu hominis, that
is to say, Of the byrth of mankynde: whiche we
nowe doo name, The womans booke, for so
muche as the moste parte, or wel neare all there-
in entreated of, dooth concerne and touche onely
women. In whiche his translation he varied
or declyned nothyng at all from the steppes of
his Latine authour, obseruyng more fidelitie
in translatyng, then choyse or discretion at that
tyme in admittynge and allowyng many thynges
in the same booke, greatly needyng admonition
and wary aduysle or counsel to the readers, which
otherwys might sometymes be that for a helpe,
the which should turne to a hinderance. Where-
fore I reuoluyng and earnestly reuysyng from
toppe to toe the said booke, and here withal consi-
dering the manyfolde vtilitie and profyte which
thereby mought insue to all women (as tou-
chyng that purpose) yf it were more narrowly
looked ouer, and with a strayghter iudgement
more exactly euery thyng therein pondred and
tryed, thought my labour and paynes shoulde
not be euyl employed, ne vnthankefully accep-
ted and recepued of all honeste, discrete and sage
women, yf I after good and diligent perusyng
thereof, dyd correct and amende suche faultes in
it,

The Prologue.

It, as seemed worthy of the same, and to aduise the readers what thinges were good, or intollerable to be vsed, whiche were daungerous, and which were bitterlie to be exchued. The which thing I haue not onely so done, but ouer this, haue thereunto adioyned and annexed dyuers other moze experimented and moze famillier medicines. And farther haue in the fyrst booke set forth, and evidently declared, al the inward partes of women (suche as were necessary to be knowen to our purpose) and that not onely in wordes, but also in liuely and expresse figures, by the which euery part before in the booke described, may in maner be as exactly and clearly perceiued, as though ye were present at the cutting open of Anothomie of a dead woman.

Many thinges annexed & newly added to this booke. The contents of the first booke.

And thinke not the vtilitie and profite of this fyrst booke, and knowledge thereof to be litle or of small value, but take it as the foundation and ground, by the perceiurance wherof, your wyttes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe euery thing commeth to passe within your bodies in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of byrth. And further, by the perfect knowledge of this booke, ye shall clearly perceiue the reason of many diseases whiche happen peculiarlye to women, and the causes thereof, by whiche perceiurance, agayne ye shall haue the redrer vnderstanding howe to withstande and remedy the said infirmities or diseases. For note ye wel, that as there is no man whatsoeuer he be, that

Howe profitable & first booke is

The vtilitie of the perfect knowledge of Anothomie.

W ii

shall

The Prologue.

shall become an absolute and perfect Physician, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledge of all the inwardes & outwardes of mans and womans body: euen so shal ye neuer groundlye vnderstande the matters contained in the seconde booke, or any other communication, or wytyng, touching the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissauce in the first booke. Agayne, when that a woman cometh to a Physician for counsel, concernyng somethyng that may be amysse in the part: the aunswere of the Physician, and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie, is manye tymes obscure, darke, and strange, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the situation, maner, & fashion of the inwardes. And truely when a person is sicke or diseased in anye part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to vnderstand in what part the disease is, and how that part lyeth in the body. This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther engin and policie, to inuent infinitely the better howe the medicine should be applied, & after the most profitable sort ministred & set to the diseased plot. To be short, all the wises and artificiall craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of Physick, procedeth and springeth of the profound knowledge of Anothomie. Therefore mine aduise & vtter counsel is, that al womē in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstanding of this fyrr booke:
well

The coun-
saile of the
aucthour to
the readers.

The Prologue.

well assuring them that they shall not repent
them of theyr small paynes bestowed in that be-
halfe. And to the ende that euery thing myght
be the playner and more easie to attayne vnto, I
haue at the latter ende of the foresayd fyrst booke,
set the fygures which represente suche matters as
were entreated of in the booke before, and also
haue therto annexed a sufficient declaration and
exposition by letters, of all partes and parcels
conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the dy-
uers sortes and maners of the deliuerance or
byrth of mankynde, and all the daungers, pe-
rils, and other cases happenyng to the labouring
woman at that season, with remedies and ma-
nyfolds medicines concernyng the same, where
also we haue not omitted ne left out anye medi-
cine beyng fyrst in the olde booke, but haue in
many places rectified and amended the same,
accozdyng to reason and the lawes of physike;
and besydes this, haue added thereto diuers o-
ther salutarie and effectuell medicines, suche as
eyther I my selfe or other Physicians, beyng yet
alyue at this day, haue experimented and prac-
tised. Furthermore, in this second booke ye may
fynde diuers remedies whereby to prouoke the
termes or flowres (when that needeth) or to re-
strain or stop the same whē they issue more large-
ly then nature dooth requyre, with many other
matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

In the thyrde booke shalbe entreated, of the
election and choyle, by certayne signes and to-

The conten-
tes of the se-
cond booke.

Many truly
experimen-
ted medici-
nes added to
this booke.

Things
entreated of
in the thirde
booke.

The Prologue.

hens of a good Nurse, whiche may foster and
bryng by the chylde beyng borne. Item medi-
cines encreasynge, dimynyshynge, attenuatynge,
engrossynge, and amendynge the mylke in the
Nurses brestes. Also remedies for many and
sundrye diseases, whiche oft tymes chaunce vnto
infantes after their byrth.

What is
conceyved in
the fourth
booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll some-
what commune of conception, with the causes
hynderynge or fartherynge the same, shewynge
certayne counsaile and remedies whereby (by
the grace of GOD) the vnfruitful may be made
more fruitfull, and impedimentes of concep-
tion, by vertue of medicines, remoued and over-
come, the woman beyng made the more apt to
conceiue. And farther, in this laste booke shall
be vttered and sette forth certayne embellishe-
ynge receiptes, concernynge onely honeste health,
some decozation and cleynesse, alwayes mooste
lovable and commendable in a woman, as to
scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to
keepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere
from fallynge away, to take away heere from
certayne places, where beyng it causeth some
deformitte or vnseemlynesse in a person, to
subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or o-
ther where, to remoue and to doo away spottes,
freckens, and other suche lyke displeasaunte
markes and tokens, to souple and mollesye the
skynne beyng rugged and rough, with other
moe suche lyke matters, to long here to be re-
hearsed, the whiche truely are not of anye pri-
dent

The Prologue.

dent person to be reſected, improued, or diſprayed, ſoſmuch as I teache nothyng in that place, but that only whiche may make to the honeſt, comely, and commendable conſeruyng and maynteynyng of the inſet and naturall beautie in a woman, vtterly abhorryng and deſpyng all fardyng, paintyng, and caunterfaſt caſt colour, whiche of ſome damnable and miſproude people be dayly bled, ſuche as by all meanes poſſible ſeeke and ſearche more the abhominable and deuilliſh painting a garliſh ſetting forth of their mortal carkaſes (the better thereby to commend it vnto the eyes of fooliſh & ſonde men) then by honeſt, ſober, debonayre, & gentyll maners, ſo to demeane their lyfe, that they may therby rather obteyne the loue, amitie, and hartie perpetuall ſauour, fyrſt of God, & then of all honeſt, diſcrete, and godly wyſe men. Thus nowe to be ſhort, I haue in as compendious maner, as the matter woulde ſuffer, ſet before your eyes the cheefe and principal contentes comprehended in this lytle volume. And now remaineth there nothing els but only to require the beneuolent ſauour and good acceptation of this my labour and paynes ſpent in the compilyng of theſe ſoreſayde matters, prayyng, that as it hath ben to me payneful in the compoſyng thereof, ſo it may be both pleaſant and fruitefull to al women (for whole ſake & only reſpect it is ſet forth) in the reading thereof. Howbeit, I am not ignozant ne vnſure that manye there are, before whole ſyght this booke ſhall ſynde ſmall grace, and leſſe ſauour.

Againſt
painting of
womens
faces.

The bene-
uolence of
the reader
required.

The Prologue.

Harde to
please many
iudgements.

The manner
of Poets in
tymes past.

The diffi-
culty to con-
cyle the good
will of per-
uert people.

So harde a thing it is to wyrite or endite anye
matter whatsoeuer it be, that shoulde be able to
sustayne and abyde the variable iudgement, and
to obteyne or winne the constant loue and a-
lowaunce of euerye man, especiall ye if it con-
teyne in it any noueltie or bntwont strangenes.
Therefore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed,
when that they enterprysed any new or strange
workes, were wont in the frunt of the same,
with greate protestation, to innocate and call
vppon all the goddes and goddesses by name, re-
quyring them fauourably to aspyre, ayde, and
prosper their attempted purpose, to the ende
that by theyr obteyned fauour, it myght be the
more acceptable and gracious to all suche as
shoulde it beholde and reade. Whose example
ryght necessary and needeful it were that I here
shoulde deuoutly ensue and folowe, so that I
coulde fyrst beleue that by suche manner of inuo-
cation, myght be allured and wonne the bene-
uolencie and wyllyng fauour of all suche in
whose hādes this present booke shoulde happen
to fall. But truely I do suppose, that although
I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses
out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye
to be assistent the three louyng graces, or great
Apollo, god, maister, and cheefe inuentour of
the nature of all hearbes and other medicines,
or Esculapius cheefe patrone and president in
the worthye science of Physicke, or wittie Mer-
curie with his doulse and sugred eloquence,
with sweete Suada, goddesse of al perswasion,
with

The Prologue,

With all other the goddess and goddesses what
euer they bee, in whom ingenious Poetes do
saigne to be a maiestie, myght, and power, to
enclayne the hartes of men for to delyte and take
pleasure in any suche thyng whiche fyrst shalbe
by their godhead alowed and fauoured: though
(I say) all these shoulde firmly conspyre in one
togeather, and bende them vtterly to the most of
theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and
with their holye poetical spirite to breathe ouer
this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people
of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and waywarde
wittes, that woulde (without all good reason)
blame and improue the same bryneth yet scene,
and muche lesse read. For who be they that geue
so precipitat and headdy iudgementes in al ma-
ner of matters, as suche (for the moze parte) the
whiche therein shall haue leaste cognoissaunce
or knowledge, and take least payne in readyng
or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynst
the whiche they be moste skoute, doughtie, and
bolde pronouncers. And this do I not say on-
lye of them, that peraduenture shall here and
there in the procelle of this booke fynde any
perticuler matters to reprove, and carpe, some-
tymes worthylle, and sometymes otherwysse:
but also, yea, and that muche moze, of them
whiche generally without all exception, shall
condemne and vtterly reprove all the whole
matter: some alleagyng that it is shame, and
other some, that it is not meete ne syttyng
suche

The lyght
iudgements
of many mē

Of them
that vtterly
do condemne
this booke.

The Prologue.

Answer to
certayne ca-
uillations.

Nothing so
good but it
may be a-
bused.

suche matters to be entreated of, so playnely in
our mother and bulgar language, to the dis-
honour(as they say) of womanhead, and the de-
rision of theyr wont secretes, by the detection
and discoueryng whereof, men it readyng or
hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to ab-
horre and lothe the companye of women, and
further, in theyr communications to teste and
bourde of womens pslutties, not woont to be
knowen of them, with diuers other suche lyke
cauillations and reasons: so that theyr opinion
it is, that it were more expedient and better to
suppresse and vtterlye to condemne vnto darke-
nesse for euer this booke, then to sende it forth
into lyght. Loe, suche is the light iudgement
of them, the which in euery thyng, wherof may
ensue both good and euyll, haue alwayes theyr
eyes walkyng, and firmly assured and directed
hpyon the euyl, pyckyng and choosyng out the
woorst of euery matter, omitting and leauyng
to speake of the beste, as the thyng whiche were
nothing to theyr purpose. If euerye thyng in
this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed hpyon
after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to con-
demne and banyshe those thynges farre from
vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and ta-
ken for the most necessary, woorthy, and of grea-
test price or estimation. For to be short, there is
nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it may
be peruerterd and turned to an euyll vse, by
them that be euyll and naught them selues,
and

The Prologue.

and doo abuse it : ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse thereof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynde. Fyre and water be two ryght necessarie elementes to the vse of man, without the whiche we coulde not lyue : yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deede hath been done, and perpetrated. By fyre hath been consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreyes. By water, swallowed and drowned infinite men, shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate and drynke, to the moderate blesers thereof, dooth minister and mainteyne lyfe : And contrary, to the vnmeasurable and vnfaciat gourmaintes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand tymes brought surfettes, sycknesse, and at the laste death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violence of theyr fyrce enimies, the true wayfaryng man, from the assault of the theefe : Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons, Realmes and Cities be subuerted and bitterly destroyed, the true mans throate by the theefe cut. The moste holye and sacred Byble teacheth nothyng but holynesse and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and briefely, the hygh waye to God. The blessed Sacrament of the body & blood of Christe Iesus was instituted and ordeyned by our Sauour him selfe, for a principall earnest, lyuely, and moste present consolation and comforte.

Fyre & water abused.

Meate and drynke abused.

Weapons abused.

The Bible abused.

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

The Prologue.

and comfort of mans conscience, yet both holye Scripture, and also the foresayde holye Sacrament, haue been, be, and wyl be, the confusion and condemnation of a great number of the abusers and indigne or vnworthy receyuers of them both. Shoulde men, for the auoyding all these foresayde inconueniencies, and for the reasons abouesayde, condemne and banyshe fyre and water, forsake theyr meate and drynke, suppress and forbyd all manner of weapons, abolyshe and set asyde the holy Scripture, deny or vnregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were but madnesse once to thynke it. Therefore I say, the iudgement of that eye can neuer be equall & indifferent, whiche hath moze respecte and regarde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes possible to happen (onely through the misuse of a thyng) then to the emolumentes and profytes dayly and commonly lyke to ensue to the well vsers of the same: that, that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disallowed for the sake of them that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also dooth testifie, To them that be good them selfe, every thyng turneth to good: what euer it be, is to them a sufficient matter and occasyon therein to seeke the gloire of GOD, and the only profyte of their euen Chrysten. And contrary, suche as be of yll disposition, in every thyng (be it neuer so good and salutarie) picketh out matter of maintenance to theyr lewdenesse, turnyng matters of sadnesse and discretion, to foolyshe and pryncypally contention.

wherefore

Whose
iudgements
can neuer be
indifferent.

To the good
every thyng
turneth to
good.

The condi-
tion of such
as be yll.

The Prologue.

wherefore considering that there is nothing in this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holy, or vertuous, but that it may by wickednesse be abused, it shalbe no great wonder, though this little booke also, made, wrytten, and set forth for a good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons be bled contrary to godlynesse, honestie, or content of the wyfter thereof. The abusion of this booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth onely in these two poyntes. The one is, least that some yll disposed person shoulde wickedly abuse suche medicines as be here declared for a good purpose, to some deuyllische and lewde vse. What I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that haue vnderstandyng, ryght soone wyll perceiue.

The seconde poynt is, least that this booke happening into any lyght marchauntes handes, shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuyse of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes, to the derision or ashamyng of suche women as shoulde be in presence, &c. To these reasons can I make no better aunswere, then hath ben alleaged before. Notwithstanding, yet I say that I trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke shall be so discretely diuided abroad, that none of them shal fall in any suche persons handling.

Agayne, yf any do chaunce to them, I am sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue; as the rest of this booke, the which thing when they shall doo, here shall they heare of me, that they be in theyr doynges neyther honest, good, ne godly, but speakyng vnrerently, contemp-
tuously,

wherein
this booke
may be a-
bused.

The second
poynt.

No lyght
persons shall
haue any of
these booke.

The Prologue.

Of foolishe
and lewde
talkers.

Some wold
that neither
honest ne
vnhonest
shoulde haue
this booke.

tuously and vntymely of suche thynges, they do
great inquiry, dishonour, and contumelye to na-
ture: for he that declareth anye thyng in man
or woman, pryncipallye apart, talkyng and rehear-
sing it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his
euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall
and deadly synne, for so muche as contumeli-
ouslye he ashameth and confoundeth his euen
Christen, wherewith he byrnyng hym out of
patience, mouing hym to yre, and vengeaunce,
in rehearsing of suche thynges, and after suche
sorte, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and bere
his mynde. wherfore for suche deedes, he shall
not be accounted of the number of honeste and
sage persons, but of the lyght and lewde. Yet
another sorte is there, whiche woulde that nei-
ther honeste ne vnhoneste men shoulde see this
booke, for because (as they saye) be a man neuer
so honest, yet by reading here of thynges to them
before vnknewen, they shall conceaue a cer-
tayne lothsomnes and abhorring towarde a
woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe
nothyng in woman so pryncipallye ne so secret, that
they shoulde neede to care who knowe of it, nei-
ther is there any part in woman more to be ab-
horred, then in man. And yf the knowledge of
suche thynges whiche commonly be called the
womans pryncipalities, shoulde diminishe the hear-
tie loue and estimation of a woman in the
minde of man, then by this reason, Whiskitans
and Chyrurgians wyues shoulde greatly be ab-
horred & misbeloued of their husbandes. And I
my

The Prologue.

my selfe lyke wyse, whiche wyrteth this booke,
shoulde marueylouslye aboue many other ab-
horre or lothe women. But to be shorte, there
is no such thing, neyther any cause thereto why.
Wherefore all suche slender reasons set apart, let
no woman be greued who shall see or beholde
this booke : for yf the partie be lewde, unhappy,
and knauishe that shall reade it, here I am sure
he shal learne neyther lewdenesse, unhappinesse,
ne knauerye. Howebeit, generally to al men, in
whose handes this booke shal chaunce to come,
I counsaile and exhorthe, that they take not by-
pon them to talke of any thynges therein con-
teyned, but onely where it may edifie, and be as-
suredly wel accepted.

No matter
who reade
this booke.

The exhor-
tation to all
readers.

For women lightly wyll not gladly heare of
suche matters, by any man, vnlesse it be a Phi-
sition of whom they requyre counsaile, or of
theyr discrete husbandes. It shall be no dis-
pleasure to any honeste and louyng woman,
that her husbände shoulde reade suche thynges:
for many men there be of so gentle and louyng
nature towarde theyr wyues, that they wyll be
moze diligent and carefull to reade or seeke
out anye thyng that shoulde doo theyr wyues
good, beyng in that case, then the women them
selues. Briefly, I requyre all readers hereof, to
interpretate and consure euerye thyng herein
conteyned, accordyng to the beste, and to vse
euerye thyng herein, entreated of to the pur-
pose wherefore it was wyrtten. For truly as
for

The Prologne. ¶

The consi-
deration
why this
booke was
set forth.

This booke
set forth in
many other
languages.

for my parte considering the manyfolde, dayly,
and imminent daungers and perylles the which
all maner of women, of what estate or degree so
euer they be, in their labours do sustayne and
abyde, yea, many tymes with peryll of theyr lyfe
(of the which there be to many examples, neede-
lesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde
be a verye charitable and laudable deede, and
ryght thankefully to be accepted of all honour-
rable and other honeste matrones, yf by my
paynes this little treatise were made to speake
Englyshe, as it hath ben long syth taught to
speake Dutche, frenche, Spanyshe, and diuers
other languages. In the whiche countreyes
there be fewe women that can reade, but they
wyl haue one of these bookes alwayes in rea-
dynes, where also this and other suche bookes be
as commonly solde at euery Stationers shoppe,
as any other booke. The same commoditie then
and profyte whiche they in theyr regions doo ob-
teyne by enioying of this litle booke in theyr
maternall language, may also ensue vnto all
women in this noble Realme of Englande, it
being lykewyse sette forth in our Englyshe
speech, so that to them whiche diligently wyl
aduerte and geue heede to the instructions of
this litle booke, it may supplye the roome and
place of a good mydwylfe, and aduylse them ma-
ny tymes of sundrye causes, chaunces, and reme-
dyes, wherein peraduenture ryght wylfe wo-
men and good mydwylfes shalbe full ignorant.

And

The Prologue.

And truly (as I haue been credible enformed
by dyuers persons worthy to be beleued) there
be (syth the fyrst setting forth of this booke) right
many honozable Ladyes, and other worshipful
Gentilwoman, whiche haue not disdayned the
oftener by the occasion of this booke, to fre-
quent and haunt women in theyr labours, ca-
rying with them this booke in theyr handes,
and causyng suche parte of it as doth cheefly con-
cerne the same purpose, to be read before the
Hdywfe, and the rest of the women then be-
yng present, whereby oft tymes, they all haue
been put in remembraunce of that, wherewith
the labouryng woman hath been greatlpe com-
forted, and alleuiated of her thyronges and tra-
uayle: whose laudable example and doynges,
woulde **G D** that many proude Hdywfes
woulde ensue and folowe, among the whiche,
as there be many ryght expert, diligent, wyle,
circumspect, and tender, about suche busynesse, as
apparteyneth to theyr office: So be there a-
gayne many moe full bndiscrete, vnreasonable,
chorlysh, and farre to seeke in suche thynges, the
whiche shoulde cheefely helpe and succour the
women in theyr mosse paynfull labour and
thyronges, through whole rudenesse and rash-
nesse onely, I doubt not but that a great num-
ber of women in theyr labour speede woulde then
needed otherwyle. But here nowe let not the
good Hdywfes be offended with that, that is
spoken of the badde. For verily there is no sci-
ence, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Beres,

Howe La-
dyes & gen-
tilwomen
haue used
this booke.

Of Hdy-
wifes.

In every
science there
be of al
sortes.

The Prologue.

Some myd-
wines
would haue
had this
booke for-
bydden.

The false
surmises of
the maleu-
lent.

The good
Mydwines
were glad of
this booke.

and Wises, whiche as aboue all other haue most
neede of information and teachyng, so most com-
monly agayne, more then any other, wyl they
kyche and wynce agaynst suche as woulde them
refourme or reduce to any better way then they
haue ben accustomed to in tymes past. And this
doo I say, for because that at the fyrste commyng
abrode of this present booke, many of this sort
of Mydwines, mooued eyther of enuie, or els of
mallice, or both, diligented and endeuoured
them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to
fynde the meanes to suppressse and abrogate the
same, makyng all women of theyr acquaint-
taunce (whom they thought to haue any know-
ledge thereof) to beleene that it was nothyng
worth, and that it shoulde be a flaunted to wo-
men, forsomuche as therein was descried and
set forth the secretes and prauities of women,
and that euerye boye and knaue had of these
bookes, readyng them as openly as the tales of
Robin hood. &c. The which sayinges, as they
were false and vntrue, and malicious allegati-
ons onely of euyl harted persons, to whom it
was great greefe, that any by readyng thereof,
shoulde see or vnderstande more then they had
knowledge of before: So is it very soothe and
true, that ryght dyuers of the better and more
sober sorte, were thereof full sayne and glad, and
berye desyrous to haue of them, and gaue
saythfull counsaile also vnto women of theyr
familiar knowledge, to heare the booke read by
some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it
them

The Prologue.

them selues. Whose honest and vertuous industry in that behalfe, as it dooth merite and deserue the laude and prayse of al them that be laudable them selfe: euen so is the fylthye and vile ingratitude and dispiteuous enuie of the maleuolent, to be detested and vtterly abhorred of all people: Whose malignant wittes, if they might preuaile of theyr purpose, woulde slay the good courages of al honest enterprises, in those matters and all other. And thus I conclude & make an ende of this rude Prologue, requiring the gentle readers thereof, that yf they shal fynd any thing therin interpretable to diuers senses, to accept only that whiche may make to the best, according to my meanyng.

C ii

Enuie & unthankfulness
to be abhorred.

The first booke.

In this first Chapter is breiefely
declared the contentes of the
first booke.



Although that many thinges, entreated of in this first booke, shal seme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstanding of the seconde booke: yet then contrary do I ensure and certifie (as I haue sufficiently sayd in the Prologue) that the ignorant in the first, shalbe full blynde in the seconde, to the whiche, the first is as a key, opening and clearing the matters to be entreated of in the seconde.

The vtilitie
of the first
booke.

The con-
tentis of
this booke.

In this first booke then shalbe declared the fourme, maner, and situation of the inwarde partes of a Woman, suche as are in them by nature dedicate and assigned to the propagation, conception, and bearing of mankynde: in whō truely is the receptacle, & as ye woulde say, the campe or feelde of mankinde to be engendred therein. And although that

that man be as principall moouer and
 cause of the generation: yet (no displea-
 sure to men) the Woman doth conferre
 and contribute muche more, what to
 the encrease of the chylde in her
 wombe, and what to the nouryshment
 thereof after the byrth, then doth the
 man. And doubtlesse, yf a man woulde
 demaunde to Whom the chylde oweth
 most his generation: He may worthily
 make aunswere, that to the mother,
 Whether ye regarde the paynes in bea-
 ryng, other els the conferrence of masse
 matter in begetting.

The wom-
 conferreth
 more the ge-
 neration
 then man.

Donquixot
 and his
 good right

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall
 reade certaine thinges, which in times
 passed haue ben corruptly, negligently,
 yea and very falsely wyrtten of, and of
 the whiche both men, yea and women
 them selues, haue conceyued very erro-
 nous and misopinions, as ye shall far-
 ther perceyue in the procelle.

Many
 things falsly
 wyrtten in
 times past.

Nowe therefore that we come to the
 declaration of the Organs generatiue
 in woman, it shall be necessary to the bet-

ter vnderstanding thereof, first to shew
the description of certayne thynges,
without whose knowledge, this trea-
tise would be many tymes the more ob-
scure and darke.

Of the
description
of the
body
of man

In howe many coates the body is
encompassed or inuolued. Chap. ii.

The princi-
pall coates
of the body.



the body of man or wo-
man is inuolued or com-
passed vniuersally with
three principall coates.

Of the
description
of the
body
of man

Of the whiche the firste
and bestermoste is called the skynne, in
Latine *Cutis*, with whom generally e-
very part of the body is clad and inclo-
sed, the which yet in some part is more
softe, delicate, and thynne, then in some
other, and in some one person more
thynne & styffe, then in some other &
gayne, for causes needlesse here to be
rehearsed.

The super-
ficial skynne.

And ye shall note, that vpon the out-
warde face and superficie of this skin,
there is yet another thinner skynne, in
Latine

Latine commonly named *Cicula* of
 some *Efflorescentia cutis*. This thynne skin
 is it, the which ye see rise lyke a bladder
 when any part of the body is blistered
 with fyre or hot water, so that betwene
 this thynne skin and the very skanne, is
 contained the water which resorteth to
 the place by the violence of the fyre or
 heat, the which thin skin also we vse to
 pricke to let the water issue forth: also
 the same that skaleth or pylleth of the
 halles or other parts of the body being
 scabbed & begynnyng to drye. Item the
 skin that the Adders do cast in the sum-
 mer time, is the foresaid thin superficial
 all skin, & not the very substantiall skyn
 of the body in deede. For the very skin
 neuer pylleth ne falleth off but by good
 violence, as by slaying, like as beastes be
 skinned at the butchers, & as they slay ro-
 vens. And againe the thin or superficial
 skin, skale it or fall it off neuer so often, yet
 in the place of it is reingendred new, as
 good wayes as the former. But if
 the second and very skin be perished, by

printed in
 the library of
 the University of
 Oxford

printed in
 the library of
 the University of
 Oxford

printed in
 the library of
 the University of
 Oxford

The very
 skin skaleth
 not off.

The verye
skin perished
is neuer re-
stoyed.

cuttyng, or apostumation, or by other
casualtie, it wil neuer be restored to his
olde perfection agayne, but shall shewe
alwayes in the place where it is, as it
were a seame, skarre, or marke, smothe,
and harder then the other skynne, and
without naturall powlers.

The second
coate.

The fleshye
skynne.

The second inuestiture or clothyng
of the body, is named the fleshye skin, in
Latin Membrana carnosa, so called, for be-
cause that it containeth and is compas-
sed of fleshyenes, then any other kyll or
skin in all the bodye, & is as it were the
lying to the fore sayd Cutis, that is the
very skin immediately aboue hym, the
very skin and it being both basted toge-
ther, by a great number of small fybres
or, cordes enterlasing these two skynnes,
so that with great payne bnneth may
they be separated the one fro the other.
And farther, betwene these two skynns
runne a great number of baynes, ar-
tires, and sinewes, in euery part of the
body, so that the greate baynes which
appeare so manifestly to your syght in
the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne between the proper skinne and the fleshy skinne, this being to them as a bedde, & that as a couerlet.

The thyrde coate of the bodie, is the fatte, in Latine ^{Adeps,} the which doeth so generally in euery part of the bodye inuolue & wrap the same, as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman being in any reasonable lykyng, it is founde in euery part (except fewe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places nedelesse here to be resited, and doth entercurre & runne betwene the two foresayde skinnes, receyuyng & embrasing in it selfe the small bastynge fibres, the vaines, artires, and sinnes, which (as I said before) be deriued fro the one skin to the other: And the greater foyson of fat that there is betweene the two skinnes, the lesse be the vaines intercurring betweene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance of

The thirde coate, is the fatte.

Store of fat letteth the shew of the vaines.

The first booke.

Fat in some
part, more
then some.

That is
conceyned
next vnder
the fleshye
skynne.

of fat brownyng & couerpyng the great-
nes of them) the Which also in the selfe
same place of a leaner oz sparer person,
shalbe scene very great, and as it were
swollen baynes, in comparison of the
fatter. Itt, vnderstand ye that in some
part of the body, naturally fatnes doth
abound much more then in other some,
as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two
fingers thicke & more: and in women
that be meanely fat, in the thyres & buc-
rockes this fatte is of thre, yea foure
fyngers thynknes, which (as I saide a-
bove) alway hath his place betweene
the foresayde two skynnes.

Nowe immediately vnder the fleshy
skyn, be conceyned the Muskles of the
body, so that the inner face oz superficie
of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth
the muskles, is alwaies bedewd with
a certayne slimy moisture, by which
meanes the foresaide Muskles moving
and styrring vnder the said fleshy skin,
be the freer, & haue the lesse impediment
oz let in there motion, & verye easie it is
to

to separate this skyn frō the Muskles.

Here is declared What the Muskles be. Chap. iiii.



The muskles of mans body be called the moouing cordes and fleshye strynges, whereby any member of the bodye is mooued to or fro, vpwarde or downewarde, or turned rounde. As for example. If ye close, or otherwise do moue either of your handes, and in closyng or moouyng it with the other hande doo feeles the wyeste of that hande, ye shall sensibly perceiue as it were certayne cordes monyng vnder the skynne, the whiche be called Muskles, in latine Musculi. To discusse curiously the nature or occasion of the name of Muskles, is not for this place. Here it is sufficient to vnderstand what is meant by the name. Yet note ye well, that wherefoener there is great store of Muskles, and cheefely in the myddle parte of them, there is also great plentye of fleshe, enterlardyng

what is meant by the name of Muskles.

The first booke.

The Mus-
cles enter-
mingled
with fleſhe.

lardyng & entermynglyng it ſelfe with
the Muskles, & as it were conbindyng,
colligatyng, or knittynge togeather the
Muskles, not ſo yet, but that neuerthe-
leſſe they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the body leſſe a-
part and vnmentioned of, here wyll I
only declare a litle of the Muskles of
the belly, forasmuch as their operation
is ſometymes conſerent and apparte-
nyng to the matters that we entend of.

The Mus-
cles of the
belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the belly,
next vnder the fleſhy kyll or ſkyn, be .iii.
Muskles, eche ſituate and ſet vnder o-
ther, of the whiche, the vpper moſte im-
mediately touchyng the fleſhy ſkyn, be
called the Byaſſwyle deſcendyng Mus-
cles, in Latin Musculi obliqui deſcendentes.
Of theſe Muskles there be two, in eche
ſyde of the belly one, ſo that theſe two
Byaſſwyle deſcendyng Muskles meete
together in the middle region of the
belly, & be extended or ſpread ouer al the
amplitude of the belly, ſhaping thereto
as it were another coate.

The

The seconde Muskles be named the byaswyse ascendyng Muskles, in Latin, Musculi obliqui ascendentes, whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also (as of the firste) in eche side or coaste of the belly, is there one.

The third sort of the belly Muskles, as they be situate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the ryght Muskles, in Latin, Musculi recti, which be double, as the other two before. The ryght Muskles.

The fourth, be nominated the overthwart Muskles, in Latin, Musculi transuersi, because they transuerse or overthwart the belly. In eche side likewise of whom, there is one of these muskles, which in the middle line of the belly encountre eche other, as I haue sayde of the aboue named three Muskles: so that the byaswyse ascendyng, and the byaswyse descendyng, with the overthwart Muskles, do eche of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the bellye, but so do not the ryght Muskles, The overthwart Muskles.

The fyrst booke.

The vse of
the foure
belly Mus-
cles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but small in comparison of the other. All these foure Muskles be, to the entrailes and bowels within the belly, as foure seuerall coates, by the vertue and helpe of whom, togeather with the ayde of the midriffe, al expulsion both bpward and downewarde in the guttes, in the stomacke, in the matrix of the woman, in the tyme of labour, and also in the bladder in tyme of makynge of water, is wrought, and yet besydes this vtilitie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) defende, fortifie, and strength the inwardes of the bellye.

Of the Kell, called Peritoneum. Capit. iiii.



The Peri-
toneum and
his office.

Under the laste muskile of the belly, called the ouerthwarde Muskile, immediatly succeedeth a certaine thin rime, kell, or skin, named in latin Peritoneum, whiche compasseth rounde the amplitude and

and largeour of the bellye, takynghis
 originall at the bynders of the loyne
 bones, and from thence dilatyngh
 and spreadyngh it selfe abroade, vnderlyneth
 the ouerthwhart Muskles, the midriff,
 & part of the short ribbes. To be short,
 this rime vnderlyneth all the whole ca-
 uitie, holonesse, or amplitude of the bel-
 lye, from the midriffe to the flankes or
 share, immediatly conteynyngh and in-
 uoluyng in it selfe all the whole conten-
 tes of the belly, even as the skin next vn-
 der the shell of an egge enuironeth and
 compasseth immediatly all the contay-
 ned meate of an egge. And as for Peri-
 toneum, doth not only inuolue all the en-
 trayles of the belly in his compasse, but
 also yeeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate
 and webbe of the cloth of his owne bo-
 die: by the which his linery, they be the
 more arctly & straghtly assured or faste-
 ned vnto hym selfe, and farther in them-
 selues the stronger within the cauitie
 of the belly: and vnder this Peritoneum, be
 contayned these bowels folowyngh.

The vse and
 profit of the
 Peritone-
 um.

Fyrst

The fyrst booke.

Bowles
contained
vnder the
Perito-
neum.

Fyrst the stomacke, which is the first receptacle and receyuer of the foode or meate chawed and mashed befoze in the mouth, from thence descendyng ouer the Wynde pype, downe along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin Omētum, the liuer, the splene, or melt, the bladder, and the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes the kydneyes, the maister bayne, and the maister artire. But here we shal begyn fyrst to entreate of the matrix, as the part which maketh cheefely to our purpose.

The declaration of the names and nature of the Matrix.

Chap. v.

Diuers
names of the
Matrix.

Here ye shall vnderstande, that these thre words, the Matrix, the Mother, and the wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say, The place wherein the seede of man is conceived, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the tyme of

of deliuerance, in latine, named vterus & Matrix. The necke of this wombe, o^rther wyle called the womans priuitie, we wyl call the wombe passage, o^r the priue passage, in latine Ceruex vteri, & pudēdū muliebre, the extreme ende, o^r y^e first entraunce of this priue o^r wombe passage, ye shall name the passage port, for because that it is the port, gate, o^r entraunce of that passage, o^r way into the wombe o^r matrix, in latine, Vulua. i. vulua.

The wombe passage the, o^r the necke of the wombe, taketh his beginnyng at the passage port, and from thence styeth and mounteth ryght bywarde vnder the sharebone like a great conduit, varyng in length and breadth according to the age of the woman.

To make especiall mention of the length of this wombe passage, were but folle, for the diuersitie thereof. Notwithstanding in women it is esteemed of the length of .x. .xi. .xii. o^r xiii. fingers bredth, some moze, some lesse. And this we may say, that nature hath so prou-

D i

ded,

The necke
of the Ma-
trix.

The first booke.

ded, that it is of sufficient length, to receyue the priuie part of man, in the generation, directyng the same towarde the wombe porte, thzough the whiche the seed is naturally sent from the man into the wombe oz mother, thereto helping an attractife powver, whiche is inset and geuen to the wombe, to attract and drauwe towarde it selfe the seede parted from the man (so that there be no other let.)

C Of the wombe and his partes.

Chap. vi.



The wombe
oz matrix in
women not
with chylde
contracted.

The head oz bypper ende of this wombe passage, is situate the wombe it selfe, whiche in woman beyng not with childe is very little, contract and drauwen togeather, so that the amplitude oz largenes therof, passeth not the amplitude & largenes of the priuie passage, the whiche thyng to some may seeme vncredible, yet by Anothomie ye may see it to be true.

And

And for al this contraction or drawing so nere together of the matrix, the outsyde of it is very smothe, moyst, glistering, and reddishe, as it were a litle redde tempered with a great deale of whyte, the insyde also of the matrix is smothe: yea, and though that the matrix (as we haue said) be full of riuels or wrinkles, by the reason that it is so contract, from a great amplitude or largenes (as may be seene in the wombe or matrix of women with chylde) to this litle compasse, yet may a body scarce perceyue in this inner side any wrinkle (albeit that there be infinite) they be so finely and nere drawen together.

This contraction of the matrix, no doubt was made by nature, for these causes, partlye that at suche tyme that the woman is not with chylde, it should occupie the lesse roome in the belly, but cheefely that in tyme of conception of the seede, the litle bolke or quantitie of the sayde seede, at his fyrst concea-
uyng into the womans mother, may

The cause
of the con-
traction of
the matrix.

The fyrst booke.

be touched rounde about euery where of the mother, and as ye woulde saye, amplexed or embrased, and conteyned (as the nut shel conteyneth immediatlye the nut) of the inner walles or face of the matrix, and as the seede is bluiſſed, shaped, and doth encrease, so doth the amplitude of the matrix enlarge and waxe bygger, so that at the laste, When the infant commeth to his full groweth, or When the woman is great with chylde, then this coate or kell of the matrix is as thinne as a bladder, Where that in tyme of his contraction, or When the woman is not with childe, the coate or wall of the matrix is as good as halfe an inche thicke.

Howe the
matrix va-
rieth þ thick-
nes & thin-
nes of his
coate.

The founde
of the Ma-
trix.

Nowe ye shal vnderstande, that the founde or bottome of the matrix is not perfectly rounde bowllwyle, but rather lyke the forme of a mans hart, as it is paynted, sauing that the partition or clifte in the matrix betweene both corners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so profoundly dented inwarde as the
clift

clyfte in the harte : For in the inwarde
 vault, cavitie, or holonesse of the ma-
 trix, there is a certayne seame. Whiche
 begynnynge in the middle of the fore-
 part of the matrix, at the wombe port,
 doth passe forth by that foreside, & so by
 the bottome to the hynder syde of the
 matrix, & from thence along downe to
 the wombe port on the backsyde, as ye
 may more evidently see in the figure
 hereof. This seame then is as it were a
 litle separation, marke, or limit, diui-
 dyng the wombe in two equall partes
 or sydes, the ryght and the lefte. Not-
 withstandyng, in the matrix there is
 but one vault, cavitie, holonesse, or am-
 plitude, the foresayd seame beyng but
 as it were a note, signe, or scace sensi-
 ble marke running along the sides and
 bottome of the wombe. But this seame
 or line where it passeth the bottome of
 the mother or wombe, is more crasse,
 thicke, and fleshye, propendyng, hel-
 ding, hangyng, or lokyng downeward
 into the vaulte or amplitude of the
 D iii wombe,

A certayne
 seame diui-
 dyng the
 Matrix as
 it were in
 two partes.

In the Ma-
 trix but one
 holonesse.

The first booke.

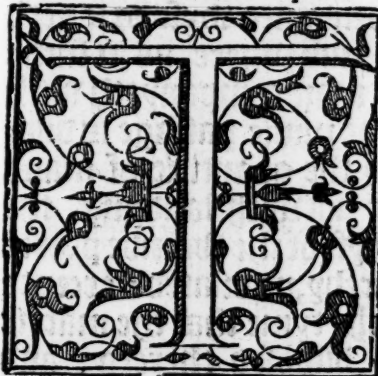
Certayne
erronious
opinions of
vii. selles in
the wombe.

Wombe, the whiche lyne in the sydes is
nothyng so manifeste ne sensible to be
perceyued. Thus ye may see, that the
myddle part of the bottome of the Ma-
trix, is not so hye as the two corners or
angles on both sydes be. Other distinc-
tions or separations in the Matrix is
there none, albeit that in tymes passed,
diuers Clarkes haue Wrytten, & many
other haue beleueed, that there shoulde
be seue selles, or seuen distinct places in
the matrix, in thre of the which on the
ryght syde, shoulde onely men chyldren
be conceaued, and in the other thre on
the left syde Women chyldren, and yf it
chaunced that the seede were conceiued
in the seuenth sell, which was the mid-
delmoste, then that shoulde become a
monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman.
The which al is but lyes, dreames, and
fonde fantasies. For the womans ma-
trix, as I haue said, is euen as a strong
bladder, hauyng in it but one vniuersal
holoneste, and the chylde when it lyeth
in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more
then

then on the other, the head beyng to-
warde one of the corners or angles, &
not bypyght toward the middle bridge.

The matrix
hath but one
bolons.

Of the mother port. Cap. vi.



The entraunce
of the matrix
or wombe, is
named the
Womb port or
mother port,
the whiche in
substaunce &
fassion muche
both resemble

Of the mo-
ther porte, &
the situation
thereof.

the fourme of an hawkes bel, or other li-
tle moyses bels, sauing that it is muche
bygger, hauing a clift ouerthwart the
body thereof, as ye may more playnly
perceine by the figure hereof. And this
port of the matrix is of substaunce more
thicke & crasse then the rest of the same,
& as it were a kernel, round & clift in the
middest. This Womb port also is faste-
ned & affixed to the bypper end of the Womb
passage, as all the rest of the wombe is.

Diiii

Howe

The first booke.

Howe be it, the middle part of the wombe port, or the snout therof, where it bosseth downeward, doth touche no side nor part of the wombe passage, but onely holdeth pendante wyse, or loketh downewarde: and where as at suche tyme that the man companyeth with the woman, the priue passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priue part, yet notwithstanding, the mouth of the clyft of the wombe port is not moued thereby, ne dilated: excepte that it be at suche tyme that the matrix beyng apt and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this wombe port do naturallie open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The wombe
wel disposed
naturallie
attracteth
the seede.

Notwithstanding, when the seede is conceaued in at this wombe port, it doth not allwayes remayne there, but many tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place or in the seede it selfe. Albeit yf the seede be retay-

retayned styll in the matrix, then doeth the wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmly, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat without violence, and so doth remayne vntyll the tyme of deliuerance, at what tyme agayne it dilateth and openeth it self, in such amplitude and largenesse, that it is wonderfull to speake of.

The closenes of the matrix after the seede conceived.

Of the vessels of seede, called the stones, with other therto appertayning.
Cap.viii.



Eche syde of the matrix lieth a stone, which both be called the womans stones, wherein is ingendred the seede & sparrie that cometh from the woman, not so stronge, firme, and mightie in operation as the seede of man, but rather weake, fluy, colde, and moyste, and of no great firmitie: howbeit, as conuenient and proper for the purpose for the whiche it was ordeyned, as the seede of man for his

The first booke.

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, muche fastyoned after the shape of a greate and brode almonde. The substance and bodye of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe, as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kernelles sette together, betweene the which is much holonesse, and therein conteyned a certayne thynne watery substance. This substance of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thynne skynne, very firmly annexed to the foresayde substance, which also doth receiue into hym selfe the seede byrners. We may name the same coate in Latine *Supergeminalis*.

Of the seede byrners. Cap. ix.

Of the seede
byrners.

The seede byrners, called in Latine *Vasa semē adferentia*, be two baynes & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one baine & one artire, and take theyr beginning

nyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes (as ye may see in the figures hereof) be situate the graet maister bayne, in Latine *Cava vena*, and the great artire, *Arteria magna*. ^{The originall of the great bayne.} The maister bayne hath his originall of the lyuer, from whence it descendeth downe-ward along the loynes , vntyll it attayne vnto the begynnyng of *Os sacrum*, where the artire (as the Worthyer) begynneth to mount vppon the maister bayne , and in this place they both diuide them selues in two partes forke wyse , the ryght part of the forke proceeding into the right thygh and legge, the leste, into the leste legge, the bayne euermore associate with the artire, the which hath his beginnyng of the hart, from whence he is descended through the mydryffe to this place , distributing to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The office of the great bayne is, to conduct and cary from the liuer (which ^{The office of the baynes.} is the blood shoppe, where the blood is engendred)

The first booke.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye blood, therewith to noryshe them. For to the great bayne where they passe, there commeth innumerable smal vaines on euery syde, euen as to the great ryuers many small streames on euery syde do resort.

The office
of the ar-
tires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade abroad in the body the vitall and lyue-lye spyrte, engendred in the bosome of the harte, and to refreshe and temper the immoderate heate whiche otherwyse mought be engendred in the bodye, the whiche also sleape we or wake we, do continuallye moue and beate, therefore the motion of them is called the pulse, and loke after what manner the hart (which is the well of these artires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and euen so do they.

The hart
and artires
haue two
contrary
motions.

The hart then, and the artires thorow him, haue two contrary motions: one is, inclosyng it selfe, and the other, in dilatynge and openynge of it selfe, whiche sorte of mouynges, we call the beatyng

beating of the pulses, When the artires
do open them selues, then they attract,
drauwe, or sucke in fresh ayre, to temper
the heate of the body Withall, and also
spirituall and thinne pure blood. But
When they close them selfe, then do they
expel mistie fumes, and hotte breathes,
or vnnaturall vapours, suche as of ne-
cessitie allwaies be engendred in al par-
tes of the bodye, by the Whiche blood
doth passe, for causes to long here to be
alleaged, neither is there anye notable
bayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the right side and forepart
of the great vaine proceedeth a branch,
deriued from that place a longe the
loynes downewards to the head of the
ryght stone: from the ryght syde lyke-
wyse and foresface of the great artyre,
descendeth a branche thwarting ouer
the great bayne downe towarde the
right loines, Where it meeting With the
foresayde bayne branche, before they
emplant them selfe in the head of the
stone, become both as one bodye, here
straight

The meeting
of the bayne
and artire.

The first booke.

straight enlarging them selfe, litle and litle stepelwyle, not fully rounde, but flattishe before and behinde, with the broder ende planting & infixing them selfe into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende, where this bayne braunche and artyeze braunche do first meete, they begin to entermingle, enbrayde, and enteriace eche other in suche infinite wyle, wreathynge and diuidyng them selues in thousande of litle braunches, as it weare heeres of the head, the one embracing, compassing, and ouerthwartynge the other so confusedly, that no wit can expresse the right maner & order of their commixtion. Cal this parte then in English, the bradid body, in Latin Varicosū formemplexum, whose nether & broder ende, as I sayde before, affixed and implanted in the vpper head of the ryght stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manifold wyle dispersed, spread, and commixt.

The bradid
body.

And

And also into the skin or couer of the stone, called befoze Supergeminalis, from the saide bradid body, be there deriued many small braunches, much lyke vnto the litle small baynes whiche ye see reddishe in a mans eye.

And looke what discription and pro-
cesse we haue made of the ryght syde
seede bringers to the ryght stone, euen
the same vnderstand of the left side seede
bringers to the left stone, sauyng that
the bayne branche whiche commeth
to the left stone, most commonly taketh
his originall of the neather syde of the
left kydney bayne, and not immediatly
of the great bayne, as the other.

And ye shal vnderstande againe, that
from the foresaid vaine & artyze of eche
syde, at the place where theyr fyrst con-
iunctiō or meeting is, proceedeth a cer-
tayne branche of the bayne, affoliolate
with the artyze, which both passe forth
together to the found or bottome of the
mother or matrix, of that syde where
they stande, there delatyng and spre-
dyng

Baynes de-
rined to the
bottome of
the matrix.

The first booke.

dyng them selfe abrode in manyfolde smaller branches, to the nourishment of the body of the matrix.

C Of the office and vse of these seede bringers. Chap. x.

The seeds
procreate of
the bayne
blood and
the artiriall
blood.

Through these seede bringers, blood out of the baynes, and liuely spirit out of the artires be deriued, yea, or rather (to speake more properlye) attract or drawen into the stones, there by vertue & naturall instinctiō of the place altered and chaunged, beyng fyrst confused together, the blood & the spirite, by mutuall amplexations or inbracementes of these two vesselles, the bayne and the artyre beyng conioyned and vnite in one very body, fyrst beginning in the bradid body, & then after in the whole body of the stone : So that thorow the manyfolde and infinite circulations of the attracted matter by the conduictes or baynes infinitely intricate and

and wreathed with a thousand reuolutions or turagaynes (and all in the little compasse of the body of the stones) the blood and spirite commixed together, getteth another nature and propriety both in colour and effect.

And here ye shall vnderstande, that moste commonly alwayes when that nature is disposed to make a transmutation of any matter, that can shee not doo, vnlesse she haue a mine, shoppe, or workehouse, wherein by continual circulation of the matter transmutable, she may byyng her purpose to passe: Euen as mettalles and other minerals of the earth, haue theyr secreete and vnuisible baynes, in whiche by daylye and long coagitation, mouyng, circulation, and hurling together, they be brought from one forme to another, & made metals of that the which before was none.

Of these sort of mines, there be foure principall in the body of man.

Note the engin and pollicie of nature.
Foure mines in mans body.

The first, is the mine of blood, which is the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,

Et

before

The first booke.

before of colour Whyte, is transmuted into red, made apt and fitte to nourysh all partes of the body, attract and drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thoroowe verye small and infinite little baynes into the liuer.

The hart
is the second
mine.

The seconde mine is the hart, which of the blood attract and drawen from the great maister bayne, proceeding out of the foresayde lyuer, into his parlours, doth engender behement & liuely spirite, commixed with depured & greatly eleborated blood, within the selles of the hart, from thence sent forth thoroowe the artyzes, into al partes of the body, beyng in colour yealowishe, thyn and hot blood.

The brayne
the thirde
mine.

The thyrde myne is the brayne, of Whom all the sinewes take theyr originall. In Whom the Wittie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of al sensibilitie be engendred, and thoroowe the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all suche partes as moue and feelee, haue that by reaso of sinewes deriued

riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones, in whō by commixtion of al the other thre foresaid mettals of the body, that is to say, bayne blood, arteriall blood, and lyuely spirites engendred in þ head, is engendred & produced seede, whiche bestowed in his due place, becommeth lyke a perfection to the creature from whence it came, that is to say, of mankinde, man.

The fourth mine is the stones.

But ye shall vnderstande, that the receauyng of the seede into the stones, is not that there shoulde be any one onely caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, oz parler in the bodye of the stone, wherein it myght be receaned and retayned, lyke as the holownesse of an egge, the meate beyng out of it, oz of an hassell nutte, the kernell out of it, but farre otherwyse: for the stones (chely in man more then in woman) be massife, not hard, but delicate and softe, as a softe kinnell, full of smat & almost vn sensible white vaines, reuoluing them selfe in and out a thousand folde, and manyfold wise intricate

Howe the seede is receaned into the stones.

The first booke.

together, within the which the seede is conueyed, caryed, concocted, or digested and altred, by vertue of the white flesh, which intercurrereth and interminglereth it selfe euery where betwene the forsaide bayne, lyke as the earth doth intercurre and intermingle it selfe betweene and among the small fibres, beardes, or heares of rootes, the whyte coate also or walles of the sayd baynes, helping not a lytle to the transmutation of the colour from red to whyte.

Howe the
colour of the
seede is
transmuted.

Liquid thin-
ges sauou-
reth of the
nature of the
vessels thro-
whe whiche
it runneth.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the seede is, receaueth alwayes a nature of the place, mine, or conduite, by which it runneth and passeth, so that when the conduite is very smal and narrowe, and long withall, then the liquour that passeth through it, receaueth and sauoureth so muche the more of the nature & condition of that vessell or conduite. As for an example: If there were a conduit or pipe made of lead, whose length were ten foote, and the inner compasse, holonesse, or cavitie of the same, but so much
that

that an heere myght passe thzough it :
 then say I, that a gallō oz quart of wa-
 ter passyng and thzylling thzough that
 narowwe conduite, shoulde sauour much
 moze of the nature and qualitie of lead,
 then though the holownesse of the a-
 foze sayde conduite, beyng styll of the
 aboue named lēgth, were so large that
 a bowle might enter and passe thozow
 the same . For this reason, that when
 the water hath to passe thozowe so na-
 row passage, it maketh the longer iur-
 ney, and yeeldeth the smaller thzreade oz
 streene, & therefore is touched moze im-
 mediately and intyzele of the insydes oz
 inner walles of the conduite. And fur-
 ther, Well ye Wote that a litle quanti-
 tie is sooner ouercome & altered, then a
 great. As a spooneful of wine standing
 all night in a pewter oz bzason pot, shal
 sauour much moze of the potte, then a
 pynte of the same. Likewise, yf a man
 woulde coole hotte dzyne by pouring
 of it out of one pot oz cup into another,
 sooner and moze perfectly shal the cir-

A litle quan-
 titye sooner
 ouercome
 then a grea-
 ter.

The first booke.

The policie
of nature.

cumstant colde ayze alter and coole it,
beyng poured out very softly, makynge
therof a fine and smal streene, then if he
dyd the same hastily. And truely this
engine and pollicie dooth nature vse in
euery part where she causeth any nota-
ble transmutation, makynge the matter
transmutable to passe through long
straighthes & narrow turnagainelanes,
the matter bowyng, enclinyng, and
aptyng it selfe alwayes to the dispositi-
on and nature of the vesselles thoro we
which it cooleth or runneth, so that the
sparme or seed of man or woman, being
attracted by the foresaid seede bringers
into the stones, passeth by many narrow
strayghtes, which beyng before bayne
blood and artire blood, by vertue of the
places through whiche it had to passe,
becommeth from red colour to whyte,
& of much more perfection then it was
before. For this trasmutation of blood
into sparme, is not onely in colours, but
also in properties and absolute perfec-
on. what greater wonder or miracle is
there,

The trans-
mutation of
blood into
sparme.

there, wherein we may knowledg and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consider how that of the meate and drynke whiche we dayly do eate, by digestion first of the stomacke, the syne iuyce thereof is separated from the drosse & grosser part: and then after at the seconde hande, the foresaide iuyce passing thorow the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thorowe infinite small baynes there transmuted into blood, from the liuer sent into the great maister bayne, from the which þ hart drawyng part, transmuteth certayne therof into Artire blood. Againe, the stoncs drawyng other parte, maketh therof and of the artire blood, whorled, circulate, & coagitate together, sparrie: which sparrie bestowed and conceaued where it should be' becometh mankind.

Howe meate
and drynke
is transmu-
tated into
blood.

This foresayde seede, as we saide be- fore, is nothyng so firme, perfect, absolute and mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not cal this any imperfec- tion or lack in womā: for the womā in her

The seede
in woman,
not so firme
as in man.

The first booke.

kinde, and for the office & purpose wherefore she was made, is euen as absolute and perfect as man in his kind, neyther is woman to be called (as some do) vnprefecter then man (for because that man is more mightier and strong, the woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the Horse, the Lion, the Elephant, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

But truely, comparyng one man to another, suche as be gelded and want the genitozies, be much feebler, weake, & effeminate, then other: in voyce womanlyke, in gesture & condition nice, in softnes of skyn and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength and force impotent, nothyng manly ne bold, the whiche imbecillitie in them, maye wel be named imperfection. For imperfection is, whē that any particuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualytie, whiche commonly by nature

who be vn-
perfecter the
one then the
other.

nature is in all other, or the more part of that kynde, comparvng it to other of the same kinde, & not of an other kinde.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyr offices. Nowe shall I declare what becommeth of the seede being thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

C Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the angles & corners of the Matrix. Cap.xi.



And the lower ende and foote or base of the braided body, where it is infixed and planted into the head of y^e stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone, there is the begynnyng of another vessell, whiche may be called the seede carver, in Latine Vas semen deferens, whose body is whyte and hardishe, lyke an harde sinewe. And from that part where it taketh his beginning, it passeth downe
wardes

Of the seede
carriers.

The first booke.

wardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde thereof (as ye may more expressely perceive in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne resting or remountyng bywarde, creepyng along the other side of the same stone, tyll it come and attayne in maner to the myddle region of the stone on that side, al the way as it creepeth, firmly fastned and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasten them selues to the walles, by the which they creepe.

The bellye and inner syde of the foresaide seede carter, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattysh, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smoth. From the begynnyng & head of this vessell, to this later ende in maner of equall corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yeele when they slide fast or hastlye, make of theyr long bodyes many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or wreathes

Wreathes nere ioyned together: howe-
be it, these Wreathes be not so frequent
& thicke in the woman as in the man.

Therfore this part of the seede cary-
ers may be called the Worme, in Latin,
Corpus lumbricosū, for because that it hath
many conuolutions, as Wormes lying
together haue.

Of the part
called the
worme.

And if ye be disposed to separate this
forenamed Worme from the face of the
stone with a sharpe knyfe, ye shall per-
ceyue no maner of holynesse or cauitie
of baine or other cōduite, but as it were
a ruggednesse, by reason of separation
from the partie to whom it was before
so surely annexed. And yet no doubt,
there is verily in it cauitie and holow-
nesse, by and thoroowe the which, seede
is caried into the angles of the Matrix.
Nowe then when this foresayde wor-
mie body hath attayned to the myddle
region (as it were) of the stone, it begin-
neth to depart from the bodye of the
stone, and is no more (as it was before)
thicke

Hollownesse

The first booke.

thicke wreathed, but playne, sinothe, & rounde, lyke a rounde sine we, With an vn sensible holonesse, departyng frō the stone along the inside of the belly, ouerthwarting the guttes, to the angle or corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it pzoceede from the ryght stone) and on the left syde (if it come frō the left stone) and that not strayght or forthryght, but somewhat bolwyng & crokyng it selfe in two or thzee crookes by the way. These seede cariers receyue the seede conficted, concocted, and digested in the stones & foresayde seede byrners, conueying and directyng the same from the stones to the insyde of the corners of the Matrix, so that they which doo open dead women, shall alwayes perceyue in the holonesse of the Matrix, these two angles or corners specially be deawed or imbryed With a Whyte slymye and thynne cleare matter, Whiche no doubt is the womans seede. And in women hauyng great
and

& feruent desire to any man, this seede doth issue from this foresayde place, downe along to the womans priuie passage, moystying al the part, as it were with a deawbe. Aristotle & other mo, do suppose that this seede in woman, serueth for no other purpose, but only to recite, moue, & stirre the woman to pleasure. But some peradventure would thinke that this were but a simple & an idle or slender purpose, which if thei did more nerely consider the matter, should perceiue it to be a iust, great, and necessary cause. For if that the god of nature had not instinced, and inset in the body of man and woman, such a belement and ardent appetite and lust, the one lawfully to companye with the other, neyther man ne woman would neuer haue ben so attentife to the workes of generation and encrease of posteritie, to the bitter decaye in shorte tyme of al mankynde. For ye shal heare some women in tyme of theyr trauayle, moued through great payne and intolerable

The pricket
of nature.

The first booke.

terable angulſhe, ſore weare and bowe
them ſelfe, neuer to companie with a
man agayne, yet after that the panges
be paſſed, within ſhort whyle, ſo entyre
loue to theyr husbantes, and ſingular
naturall deſypte betweene man and wo-
man, they forget both the ſorrow paſſed,
and that that is to come. Suche be the
pruie workes of God, and ſuche be the
prickes of nature, which neuer createth
no ſpeciall pleaſure vnaccompanied
with ſome ſorrowe, neyther is there for
the moſte part any ſorrowe, but that it
hath annexed ſome ioy or comfort, leſſe
or more, to allenuate and lyghten the
burthen and weyght of diſpleaſure.

No ioy with
out ſome ſo-
rowe.

¶ Here is declared the ſituation of the
bladder in women.

Cap. xii.



OWE for the vicinitie and
neighbourhood that is be-
tweene the pruie paſſage
and the bladder, here I
will declare a litle the na-
ture of the bladder.

The

On the bladder in woman is affittuate and set vppon the foreparte of the Mother, whose necke is annered, fastned, & vnite within the priue passage, vppon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very hard to seperate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in women is much shorter then in men, the which necke is enuironed and compassed with a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were with a brode and flat hoope ring, firming and clasping the brine passage in such wise, that no brine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it thereto: which thing cometh to passe, other when the bladder is ouercharged with brine, or els that the brine, although that it be but litle in quantitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie with it, whiche for the sharpenesse and eagerneesse of the qualitie pryckyng and tycklyng the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe many tymes for litle quantitie. &c.

The Mus-
kle of the
bladder.

Howe the
bladder
Muskle is
forced to
open it selfe.

The

The descrip-
tion of the
bladder.

The body of the bladder is round, into the which a litle aboue the necke thereof, entreth the seonde brine conduites, deriued from eche kidney one.

And here ye must fyrst vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great maister bayne, and like wyse of the Artyze, is situate a kidney, in Latin called Ren. And to euery of them from the layde great bayne and great Artyze, is there deriued a branche of the bayne, and another of the Artyze, by the which branches the kidneyes do attract and drawe blood vnto them, the which so drawen, they do (by theyr natie office) separate and diuide from the watery part, sending forth the water, other wise called brine, downe to the bladder, through the brine baynes, or conduites.

Of the stone
engendred
in the backe.

In these kidneyes is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which whē it is broken, either of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or peeces

peeses therof, descend from the raynes
oz kidneis into the bladder, by the fore-
named brine conduites, & so from the
bladder out at the yarde, Where, if the
peeses be rockie oz bigge; it causeth to
the partie in the boyding of them, vn-
tollerable paynes and torment. And
note that for the most part, the ryght
kidney euermoze standeth hyer then
the left.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstande
that when the brine, pisse, oz water is
once entred through the foresayd brine
conduites, into the bladder, it can not
returne bywarde agayne the way that
it came (were the bladder neuer so ful)
for because that where as the sayd brin
conduites doo enter into the bladder,
in the inner face of the bladder, there be
set befoze the mouth oz gul of the condu-
ites, certaine litle skinny flappes, which
suffer any thing to enter in, but when
it is once entred, these skinnie flappes
close the passage, and defende that no
thyng can rebounde, ne refluẽ backe a-

The brine
once entred
into the
bladder,
can not
revert.

The first booke.

gayne , euen as it is in a payre of bellowes, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof, to let into the bellowes great store of Wynde oz ayre at once , but when the bellowes is full of Wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with somewhat, there wyll none thereof retorne agayne out by that waye , the flappes of leather crossing and defending the passage : yea , the more vehemently and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellowes together, the faster and more stiffly doth the flaps stop the waye, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellowes , the violence and force of the Wynde closing and stopping his owne way, so that the bellowes would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder , sauing that the sayde skinnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftily, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then anye notable quantitie oz qualitie of the bryne , gathered

thered togeather in the bladder, the bladder Muskle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passing thorough the priue passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also as in the raynes, is there in manye people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, dissury, with other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is verve harde or rather impossible to be dissolved, or cured without incision and cutting out. But women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit notwithstanding, dyuers of them be herewith greuously encumbred.

The stone
engendred
in the bladder.

Of the baynes which resort to the matrix and the partes thereof.

Item of the termes & their course with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii.

The first booke.



Inasmuch as the absolute vnderstandyng of the nature of the termes in women, can not well be perceiued, except first it be knowen what vaines, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attaine to the matrix: therfore first I will entreate of them, & then consequently of þe termes.

Three notable
vaynes
resorting to
the matrix.

Vaynes then notable, whiche may be perceyued by Anothomie to reach from severall partes of the great Vena caua, or maister bayne, to the matrix and the partes therof, be three, to whom for the more cleare, distinct, and evident doctrine sake, I will geue three distinct and diuers names. The first shalbe named the bottome baynes of the matrix. The second, the necke baynes of the matrix. The thyrde, the share baynes.

The bottome
vaynes
of the ma-
trix.

The bottome baynes be they, which procede and take theyr begynnynge at the seede bringer baynes, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the matrix, there dilating them-
selfe

selfe brode in manyfolde small flippes,
nouryshyng the body of the Matrix, as
hath ben sayde alreedy in the ende of the
ix. Chapter.

As touching the necke baynes of the The necke
baynes.
Matrix, ye shal vnderstande that in the
for said. ix. chapter, I shewed you how
that the great maister bayne, and the
great artire associate togeather, when
they attayne about Os sacrum, they begin
to diuide them selues in two partes,
forke wyse, of the which the right (and so
lyke wyse the left) part of the forke is re-
diuided in other two partes forke wyse
also, wherof the bypermoste and grea-
test bayne passeth downe along tyll it
come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it
proceedeth into the vpper parte of the
thygh, & so along downe to the legges
and feete. The innermost and leste or
smaller part or bayne of this seconde di-
uision, where it parteth from the by-
permoste, passeth downe along vntyll
it come to the geeat hole whiche is al-
wayes in y share bone, through which

The first booke.

Of the neck
baynes of
the matrix

it entereth into the inner parte of the thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it attayne the sayd hole of the sharebone, it sendeth forth diuers slippes and smal branches in the necke of the Matrix, and the nether parte of the body of the Matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye may more clerely see in y^e figure hereof.

The share
baynes.

The share baynes take theyr beginnyng at the insyde of the aboue named byppermost and greatest bayne, euen at the place where it beginneth to passe ouer y^e hocklebone, fro whence this slip is deriued on eche side, that is, both the ryght and the left, vnto the middle of the sharebone, where in men it sendeth forth branches into the skinne that covereth the priue parte and the coddess, and also the Perineum, which is the place that is betweene the fundement and the yard. In women this vaine where it attayneth the myddle parte of the sharebone, it deriueeth and spreadeth it selfe into the lappes, sydes, or extreme ende of the priue passage, and also in
the

the sayde Perineum. And this shall suffice
for the declaraton of the baynes whi-
che resort to the matrix and her partes,
saue that ye muste vnderstande, that
loke what order or proceSSION of baines
commeth to the matrix from the ryght
syde, the same selfe order is lykewyle
in the left syde: and agayne, that
none of these baynes runne to the ma-
trix or otherwhere, vnassociate of an
artire.

Nowe to come to the declaration of
the nature of termes: ye shall vnder-
stand that they be called in Latin Men-
strua, so, because that once in a moneth
they happen alwayes to womankind
after .xiii. or .xv. yeres of age passed (be-
ing in their perfect helth) In English
they be named **Termes**, because they
returne eftsones at certayne seasons,
tymes, and termes. what name soe-
uer ye geue vnto it, ye shall wite, that
the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng
els, but the issuing of certayne blood,

what is
meant by
this worde
Termes.

The first booke.

comprehended in the baynes of the matrix, there by lytle and lytle collected and gathered betwene terme & terme, and so agayne at wont an accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente forth.

The which blood, the matrix baynes do attract from the great Vena caua, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with much leasure, yea, so much as there is space betwene the one hauing of the flowres & the other (whiche is commonly three weekes, more or lesse, accoꝝdyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde baynes in fillyng, and yf they were soner full, soner also woulde they sende it forth agayne. For when they be once replenished, they can not conueniently or naturally contayne or drawe any more, tyl they be lyghtened and discharged of that that is drawen alredy.

Wherefore at the foresayde certayne circuites and termes, the small endes of these matrix baynes open them selues
in

in the inner face or superſicie of the matrix, after an inſenſible & ſecrete priuie ſort, and ſo let to paſſe forth this blood, which as I haue ſayd, is called the womans termes.

The cauſe and reaſon why nature created this perpetual courſe of termes in women, is this: Forasmuche as almightie God had ſo inſtitute that woman ſhould be conceaued, efformed, or ſalliyoned, augmented, nouryſhed, and brought to perfection: this coulde not be done, vnleſſe there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office aſſigned and deſtinate, whereof nature created the wombe or matrix to be the ſayde receptacle, & houſe of office, wherein ſhe mought at her leaſure worke her deuine ſeates about the ſeede once conceaued.

The cauſe
of the ordi-
nauce of
termes.

Agayne it is not enough the ſeede to be plaſed, vnleſſe alſo it haue foode and nouryſhment, to the encrease and augmentation of the ſame: Wherefore prudent Lady nature, full wiſely hath provided

The first booke.

uided, that there shoulde alwayes be prest and redye a continuall course and resort of blood in the vaines of the matrix, as a very naturall course, spryng, fountaine, or Wel, euermore redy to ariouse, water, and nozise the feature, so sone as it shalbe cōceiued, yea although the Woman do neuer conceiue, other because she accompanieth not with man, other els for some other infirmitie, yet is there no fault in nature, Who hath prepared a place and foode to be at all tymes in a redinesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeyned for this necessary purpose, yet when the purpose fayleth (as it doth when there is no feature in the wombe to be fedde therewith) it should be to the place but a burthen & vnprofitable load, there to remaine or lynger: Wherfore then I say, at her set and prescript tyme she laboureth to cleare her selfe of it, & to expell it as superfluous and seruing to no vble. The which thing when she hath so done, yet vnto the sayde waynes of this
con-

continuall spring, resorteth of newe agayne other fresh blood in the place of that that is departed, which by litle and litle coling into them, in the wont circuite of time refilleth them, and then yet issueth agayne, and so this continuall course doth keepe alwaies in women, from their youth; tyll they come to about fiftie yerres of age, or litle more or lesse, at what time naturally this spring dryeth away, which when it is gone, it is impossible for the woman to beare any mo childre. For were the woman neuer so yong & lusty, yet if she neuer had her termes (as some suche there be) she shal neuer also haue no childre, albeit it may be that she may conceyue, but the seede conceived can not proue, but melteth & issueth forth agayne for lacke of nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that where as some wryte & say that the womans termes folow the course of the moone, so that in the full or in the wane of the mone they should alwaies come: this is not true, for they haue them at one time
and

They that
haue no ter-
mes can not
beare chyl-
dren.

The first booke.

Termes
come not to
al women
lyke.

and other in all seasons of the Moone. Agayne, as they come not to al women after one sort, or at one season, so is the tyme of theyr duraunce not all one in euerye woman, for in some they linger vpon them. v. vi. viij. yea. xiiij. dayes at eche terme, to their great effeablshmet & strong paines in the backe. In some other comonly the passe not the space of thre dayes at the vttermost, wherefore suche sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

To be short, al women (for the moste part) which be of very delicate & moyst complexions (as the sanguyne cheekely be) haue greatest abundance of termes, and longer tyme dooth it indure vpon them. And contrary, such as be dry and colerike, other by nature, or labour and trauayle, & such that be of complexion cold, haue least store of termes, and lesse tyme do they endure vpon them. After what manner the feature conceyued is fedde and nouryshe with this blood (matter at other times of y^e termes) I wyll

Wyll declare, When that I haue some
 What firste shewed the nature of cer-
 tayne caules, wherein the feature con-
 ceaued is Wrapped and inuolued.

Of the thzee caules oz Wrappers wher-
 in the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii.



The seede conceaued
 into the wombe
 oz matrix of the
 mother, anon it is
 amplexed, clip-
 ped, & embrased
 of the inner face
 of the matrix, the
 mouth oz port

The feature
 conceaued is
 wrapped in
 thzee caules.

thereof in the meane while closed & shut
 exquisitely. The seede the when it hath
 ben a certayne litle space in the wombe,
 by the naturall heate, oz rather by the
 inset & ingenite vertue of that place, is
 enuironed & enclosed rounde with thzee
 diuers coates, caules, oz, Wrappers,
 Which in Latin they call Inuolucra.

The first and moſte immediate oz
 nearest

The first booke.

The first
caule.

nearest to the body of the conception, is
a very thinne and cleare caule or skinne,
which containeth rounde about the
whole feature, and yet is fastened to no
part of the feature, but onely at the na-
uell by certayne baynes and artires,
whereof we wyll speake anone, this
caule in Greke is called Amnios, in latin
Agniua, for because it is as delicate as lam-
bes be. The Midwyfes commonly call
it the coyfe or biggin of the chylde, and
some call it the childes shert, the which
also manye tymes proceedeth alone
with the childe, eyther vpon the childes
head, or one of the armes or legges.
And then the women reserue it as a
thyng that shoulde betoken some great
lucke to the childe in tyme to come, for
they beleue that every childe hath not
such a coyfe, because it doth appeare but
seldom alone, vnaccompanied with the
other caules. Betwene this wrapper or
coyfe, and the body of the infant, is col-
lected and gathered the yelowish sweat
which euapozeth continually from the
skyn

Skinne of the infant, Whylest it is in the Wombe.

The second Wrapper oz caule, in Greke is called Allantoides, in latin Farciminosa, in The second wrapper. Englishe, these two termes doo signifie (haggaswyle) for because that it is fashioned much after the shape of the outward skinne oz bagge of an haggasse puddying. The inner face and superficie of this caule is smoth and moyste, fastened to no part of the first Wrapper, but onely at the Nauell of the chylde, and contayneth also rounde about, in his compasse and cauitie oz holownes, the whole chylde, and the sayd first caule.

Betweene this and the first caule, is gathered together all the store of brine that the chylde maketh, during the time it is in the mothers Wombe, where in the industrie of nature is to be lauded, which so prouideth, that this pyssle oz brine of the infant should be expelled betweene these two caules, and not remaine about the body therof, lest with the accrimony and eager sharpenesse hereof,

where the
urine of the
childe be-
commeth.

The first booke.

hereof, it should endamage and greene the tender body of the baby.

The thyzde Wrapper of the feature is named Chorion of the Grekes, in Latin, secunde or secundina, in English ye may call it the secundine: Albeit that in the second booke following, I do commonly vse to name þe whole afterbyrth, the secundine. And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name (of secunde or secundina) to this Wrapper, gaue the name of the whole to the part, for this terme (secunde or secundina) is proper & most due to the afterbyrth, the which afterbyrth, is nothing els but an issuing forth, and proceeding of these three Wrappers or caules, together with such grosse excrementes as haue ben engendred and remainyng in the wombe, during the tyme of conception, and that immediatly after the childe is first proceeded & come to lyght: for fyrste issueth the Infant, and then secondly the foresaid afterbirth, & therfore it may be iustly called the second birth, or secundine.

This

The thirde
Wrapper named
Chorion.

To make white pindings of honyng byrth.
To excheke the labour, & beat it in a mortar, Then prayns it wth rosmary,
pent the unto. C. rollers of sayes, & the white of two egges, great an half,
penny wafe of light bread, & put it thereto wth small traigins, and daleys
& colles, marie, sugar, salt swete, & the fist of bease: wth a
yutte cleane, putte them & seethe them.

**This Wrapper or caule the, doth not
vniuersally, and in euery part compasse
and couer the infant as the other two
Wrappers do, but onely the myddle re-
gion, as it were from the vpper part of
the waste, to the share of the infant, so
that it is compassed with this Wrapper
as with a brode hoope ryng, the lati-
tude or breadth whereof, is commonly
to be esteemed about the breadth of. vi.
or. viij. fingers, and so girdeth the child
round about the body therof, as it were
a brode girth or swadling band: but yet
ye must not vnderstand, that it shoulde
touche immediatly the bodye of the in-
fante, for betweene this and the bodye
thereof (as I haue declared before) be
the foresayd two other caules or wrap-
pers, whiche generally incloseth round
the whole corpes of þe infant, where as
this hoope caule compasseth and coue-
reth but the middle region therof only.**

The office & proprietie of this Wraper is suche : Fyrst the vtter face of it cleaueth and is affixed or basted verrye

Gi

erace=

The office
of the hospite
caule.

Eats a pint of cream, 30th id. & when it is hot put into a quart of cream
yours, & let them soak in it all night. Then put to it 8. balls of sugar, &
little popovers, & pour 2 more of cream, & a spoon of just of blood and
small cream, & let it sit in a bowl. The night of cream

The first booke.

exactly to the inner face and walles of the Matrix, by meanes of innumerable small baynes and artyes, which at this tyme doo shewe them selues more clearly in the face of the Matrix, then at any other time, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euery parte thereof, touchyng the same Matrix, so that the said hoope caule and the inner side of the matrix be baested very thicke together, by the immediate meanes of the sayde baynes and branches, euen much lyke as the bodye of the Iuy tree baesteth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the walles of trees, whereby it creepeth by many hearie fibres or smal threedes.

This coniunctio betweene the matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so brode, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe round about in the Matrix. And these foresayd baynes and artires, do not only knit and vnite these two together, but also entreth into the substance of the hoope caule at euery parte

part thereof. And Within the sayd substance of the hooke caule, these manyfold smal bzaunches meete & entermingle the one With the other, the baynes With the baynes, and the Artires With the Artires, so that in theyr recountre and meetyng, they produce alwayes bigger and bigger vaines and Artires. (but fewer) tyll at the last all these become two great baynes, and two great artires. The which foure vessels from hence proceede together, passe & pearle through the other two caules spoken of before, & so entreth into the Naul of the child, so that the three caules by the meanes hereof be attached, nailed, and fastened to the chilles naul: and When they be entered into the Naul, the two baynes degenerate in one, the Whiche fro this place mounteth vpwar along the inner superficie of the belly, vntyl it haue attained into the liuer, wher it entering, diuideth it self againe into many flippes, so that no doubt the blood is carried through this naul vaine, from the

Gii

baynes

The first booke.

baines of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the chyld, from whence againe it is attracted into all partes nourishable of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyres passe from the Nauel downeward, the one along the ryght syde of the chyldes bladder, the other along the left, tyll it attayne to the share Artires, whereof we spake before. Through these Artires, lyuely spirite and freshe ayre is deriued out of the mother into the childe, where with the naturall heate of the chyld is viui-fied and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the foresayde nauyll bayne, when the chyld is borne, begin to wither and drye, euerye day more and more, & become much like a Harpestring, without any holownesse or cavitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessel, whiche taketh his original at y^e bottome, founde, or vpper part of the chyldes bladder, & extendeth it selfe to the nauyl of the Infant, through which it passeth vntyl it come betweene

betweene the fyrst and the seconde canle
Without the chylde's body, where, by a
prinie issue deuised by nature for the
same purpose, is expelled the brine of
the Infant, proceeding by this brine
wayne from the bladder, as partly was
spoken of before, that part of this brine
wayne which is within the body, when
the chylde is borne, dryeth and wythe-
reth away, as I sayd of the other.

which way
the childe
doth expell
the brine.

The inner superfitie or face of this
Chorion, is very strongly affixed & fast-
ned to the vtter superfitie of the seconde
caule named Allantoides.

As for the bastynge that is betweene
the Matric and Chorion, many tymes it
is weakened and effeoblshed by reason
of euill, flegmaticke, or colericke hu-
mours therabout, betweene the bastin-
ges conceaued, whiche ouermuche ha-
bouiding, do cloy the said bastynge vaines
or strynges, whereby manye tymes the
one seuereth from the other before con-
uenient season, & so causeth abozement.
The mouthes or specks of the vaines in
G iij the

The first booke.

the matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Chorio,
be called in latine Acerabula & Coriledones,
for what cause, or vpon what reason, is
both nedelesse & vnprofitable here to be
rehearsed. Againe, the substance of this
Chorion is not thinne like a skin, bladder,
or caule: but of al other partes of the bo-
dye, it may be most worthyly resembled
to the spleane or melt in a man or beast:
the copulencie or thicknes whereof, is
as much, or more, as the thicknes of the
thumbe, the colour swartishe blacke. Of
which colour also the blood therein con-
teyned, is as the remayne and refuse of
the purer, attract and drawen naturally
of the Infant, by the aboue named Ra-
uel bayne. So that, to be short, Chorion
is the immediat receptacle and receiuer
of all the vaines and artires, to be dedu-
ced from the Matrix to the chylde: and
the chylde receyueth onely at his hande
the two baynes and Artyres, whiche
by the way as they passe & pearse tho-
ro w the other two caules, towards y
chyldes Nauell, they sende into eche of
the

The sub-
stance of
Chorion.

the caules innumerable small eye baynes and artyres, whereby the caules be susteyned and encreased also.

The termes then which were wont at other times to sturre them selues in the matrix baynes, & at certayne circuites to issue forth: nowe when there is a feature or chylde in the same Matrix conceiued, they proceede no more forth (as superfluous) but remaine and be reserved to the necessary nutriment of the feature, & some part therof reflueth and is reuerterd to the womans brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and created this course of blood, as hath ben wrytten sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceiued and abused, which call the termes the womans purgation, or the cleansyng of theyr blood: as who shoulde say that it were the refuse, drosse, & viler part of the other blood remainyng in the body, naturally euery
 G iiii moneth

The first booke.

The termes
be of so hol-
some blood,
as any other
part in the
body.

moneth sequestrate & separated from
the purer, for the vitilitie and euil quali-
tie therein comprehended. For vndoub-
tedly this blood is euen as pure and hol-
some as all the rest of the blood in anye
part of the body els.

The childe
being in the
wombe, no-
ryshed of the
purest blood.

Is it to be thought, that nature would
feede the tender & delicate Infant in the
mothers Wombe, with the refuse of the
blood, or not rather with the purest of
it: Yes, and therfore forbecause that she
woulde that the pure blood commyng
fro the Matrix baynes should be made
yet purer, she suffereth not the same to
enter immediatly into the Infant, but
fyist vseth another meane, & sendeth it
into Chorion or the hoope call (as I haue
sayd before) Where truely it hath a cer-
tayne circulation and another digesti-
on, wherby it is defecate, and clenfed ve-
ry exquisitely, by the diligencie of nature
attenuated and fined, and so at the laste
sent forth into the Infant, leauyng al
the grosser part in the spungie body of
the hoope caule.

¶ Yet

Yet much more are to be detested and
 abhorred the shamefull lyes and flau-
 ders that Plinie, Albertus magnus de secretis
 mulierum, & diuers other moe haue writ-
 ten, of the venemous and dangerous
 infectiue nature of the womans floures
 or termes, the which al be but dreames
 and playne dotage. To rehearse theyr
 fond words here, were but losse of inke
 and paper, wherefore let them passe
 with theyr authoers.

Flauanders
 of the Ter-
 mes.

VVhiche of the three Matrix vaynes conteyne the
 Termes, and howe the mylke commeth to
 the womans breastes.

Chap. xv.



Shewed you here
 before, that to thre
 different partes &
 regions of the ma-
 trix, there resorted
 fro thre different
 partes of vena caua,
 thre sundry vaine
 slips. Nowe whi-
 che of these slips shoulde bryng the
 blood

The first booke.

blood, called the **Termes**, into the **Mat-
rix**, or from which of them the termes
shoulde proceede, it is harde clearly to
discusse, but only by lykely coniectures.
And yet it is a thing very necessarye to
be knowen, for the redyer aduertise-
ment howe medicines for that purpose
shoulde be applyed in that place, when
neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the
Termes by some casualtie stopped, or
els contrary to restrayne them immo-
derately flowyng. For yf the bottome
baynes of the **Matrrix** do contayne only
the **Termes**, then should any medicine
conueyed vnderneath profite nothyng,
except it be conueyed so farre bp, that it
may attayne within the holownesse
of the **Matrrix**, the whiche is verye
lytle when the woman is not with
chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke baynes of the
Matrrix do only conteyne these termes,
then needed medicines to be applied no
further then to that place. As for the
thirde **Matrrix** baynes, there is none
that

that doth once suspecte the Termes to
proceede from them: But many there
be, which do suppose the termes to issue
both at the necke baynes, and at the bot-
tome baynes also, but most notably at
the necke baynes, for because (say they)
that these baynes do appeare more con-
spicuous and notable to the eyes when
a woman is cut open, then doo the bot-
tome baynes, which may be very skant-
ly perceiued, wherfore they thynke that
these necke baynes shoulde be the grea-
ter styrrer of termes.

Againe (say they) We see many tymes
that after the woman is conceiued, yet
doth there issue termes tyl the thirde or
foure, yea sometymes the fyfth mo-
neth, the whiche nowe at this tyme can
not proceede out of the matrix: for the
pore or mouth thereof, according to auc-
thours opinions, is so closed after the
seede conceyued, that the poynt of a nee-
dle can not enter, but by violence and
force. wherfore they conclude, that the
Termes at this tyme muste needes
sprynge

The first booke.

spring out of the necke bayne, and not out of the bottome baynes.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue only out of the bottome baines, & out of such of the necke baines as spreade them selfe onlye within the Matrix, as may be seene in the figure. For insomuch as nature dyd create the course of termes for no other cause, but only to be a prest and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued: to what purpose should the Termes in the necke baynes of the Matrix serue, where there can neuer be any conception, neither the seede ther can remayne: And as concernyng the issuing of the Termes after conception, I say that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as blood is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although as they say the poynt of a needle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betweene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boozdes,

the

Homo quid. In primis, Spuma facta.
 In medio, Sanguis purus.
 In fine, Cibus nutrit.

Nobis ergo superius

the poynt of a needle Will not easily enter, yet water oz any other liquid thing, may passe through without lette, and euen so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shal not folowe that the seede should passe out thereat, aswell as the blood, for the seede is of a more fast, compacte, and stedfast substance. And besydes this, by that tyme that the seede hath ben but a daye oz two in the Matrix, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the natural heate of the place, yea and is compassed with a thinne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefore it Will not so soone issue out of the matrix without great iniurie.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Phisitians do counsell women which be desirous to conceaue, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, oz wateryshnes of the matrix (whereby the attractife and attentife power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes and vapours vnderneath, oz other medi-

The first booke.

medicines at the mouth to dzye the said humidities, immediatly after the Termes be passed, and not bypon the comynng of them: for if the woman should be conceaued bypon the comynng of the sayde Termes, then woulde they com-mix them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryme or caule, whereby the seede shoulde become the thinner, and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the Termes.

But immediatly after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceaued, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong ryme or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the matrix vaines be yet open, after the lettynng forth of the Termes, they shall be the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne the selues with the feature, by meanes of calles wherein the feature is inuolued, and cheefely of Chorion, named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye
sayde

Caule.

sayde here before.

¶ Yet When the seede hath ben three or
foure Weekes in the Wombe, it is not of
sufficient quantitie to consume into his
nutriment all the bood that was wont
to resort into the Matrix vaines, wher-
fore the first, second, yea, & third moneth,
sometymes at the Womans wont time
of Termes, there issueth and she weth
some blood more or lesse: the more in the
whiche were wont at other tymes to
haue aboundaunce of them. &c. And ye
shal note that when the chld is concey-
ued, & that the caule Choriō is fastened &
baested to the Matrix by the vaines ther-
of, yet do not al the vaines of the matrix
attaine to the said Choriō, but a certaine,
so far as Choriō doth reach: howbeit the
larger that Choriō groweth With the chld,
the mo vaines doth he couer. wherfore
frō those baynes that be not yet affixed
vnto Choriō, do the termes flow at this
time: But Whē the chile beginneth once
to come to a greater perfectiō & grow-
eth, then is al the terme blood reserued
in

The first booke.

in the Matrix, as litle yenough to satisfie the childe, and then also part thereof mounteth vp into the brestes, & becommeth milke, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

¶ Yet agayne to confyrme myne opinion, that the Termes doo only issue out of the vauite of the Matrix: We shal vnderstand, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers women in cure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thrust and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the streete, being both neare the time of theyr purgation, chanced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatlye here vppon theyr Termes dyd issue, and so continued dayly, to the one of them, the space of halfe a yere, & to the other a whole yere: so that after that time the Termes staid agayne, and issued no more dayly as befoze, but once in foure wekes, at what time they boided great lumpes, cakes, or cloddes of blood, congealed together
euen

euē lyke the lyuer of a beaſt. And in the meane time , betweene eche voyding of theſe lumps of blood, (whiche as I haue ſayde come to paſſe once in foure wekes) euery day continually appeared and iſſued they? whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare the perticuler occaſions of this maner of voydyng of the termes, ye ſhal vnderſtand, that by the force of the fall and ſquat, the Matrix baynes brake, and that ſo muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of blood, and that nearer their tyme of purgation, vppon which bracke, the blood dayly iſſued afterwarde, whereby the vigour & kinde heate of the matrix, by litle and litle decreaſed and decayed, frigiditie and coldneſſe ſucceeded. By whiche occaſion alſo the mouth or port of the matrix, waxed the more contracte and narrower, for colde cloſeth, knitteth, & coniealeth. Hereto helped alſo not a litle the great vſe of colde byndyng medicines, whiche eche of them dyd apply to

The first booke

this place at the simple counsayle of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed & contracted, the blood wont alwayes daily to proceede, remaneth within the Matrix, Where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the baynes, it coniealeth and cluddereth together, like as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessel, and that the blood stande styll in it the space of. v. or vi. houres, it wyl be concret and coniealed in a cludder like a lyuer, the watery parte therof swimming and flitting aboute vppon the face of it: and euen so is it of the blood coniealed in the Matrix, so that when there is so muche of this coniealed blood conceived together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any longer, then violently and perforce it issueth out together, with farre greater peril, danger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a chylde.

f The whyte flowres that issued, during

ring the time that this blood geathered in the matrix, was (no doubt) the verve water is the part that flected when the blood coniealed, for that water can neuer conieale as the blood doth: Wherefore euery day as fast as the blood dyd conieale in the matrix, so fast also dyd the water separate it selfe from the blood, and so issued.

Notwithstanding I am not ignoraunt that the very white floures in deede do proceede from the seede carriers, into the angles or corners of the matrix, and so from thence outward, the which disease also men haue many times. And it cometh either of the abundance of fleume in the body, or of the corruption and euil qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose, may be sufficient evidences, that the Termes spring alwayes frō within the matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof. Item, I haue sene diuers other womē, in whom their termes haue stayed the space of. vi. viii. and. x. wekes, wherewith

The first booke.

theyr bellies haue encreased and waxed bigger, so that they haue thought themselves to be with chylde: Notwithstanding, at the last haue voyded suche lyke lumps of blood, as I haue spoken of here before, not without great peryll and daunger to them in the voydying, wherewithal theyr bellies haue relancked and decreased agayne. And thus I make an ende to talke anye moze of the nature & course of the termes: and now wil I declare somewhat of the conueyaunce and course of the mylke into the womans brestes: for there is great affinitye, communitie, and familiaritie betwene the Matrix and the brestes, whiche naturallie do perceyue and feele anon when the matrix hath conceived, and then begin they to bryue & to make redy theyr part, agaynst the tyme that the Matrix hath al done her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to the most mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe whiche way the saide Terme shoulde attayne from the Matrix to the brestes, ye shall vnderstande, that the vppermoste and greatest bayne of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the xiiij.chap. where it attayneth the hockle bone, redy to passe out of the holonesse of the belly into the thygh, befoze that it perse the kell called *Peritonium*, it sendeth forth a notable bayne branche, whiche from hence mounteth bpwarde along the belly betweene the ryght Muskle & the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue the nauell, where the extreme oz vpper ende thereof diuideth it selfe in manyfolde litle branches, meetyng and entermynglyng them selues with the extreme lytle branches oz flippes of another lyke bayne, descendyng from the vppermost chestbone, downe along the inside of the chest, and the insyde of the vpper parte of the belly, vntyl it meete with the foresayde mountyng bayne, a litle aboue the Nauell.

And ye shall note, that this bayne

Is iij

branche

The first booke.

branche proceeding from *vena caua*, at the highest chestbone downward along the inner syde of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeeldeth certayne little slippes & small branches of it selfe, betweene the ribbes into the brestes. Wherefore the consent of all aucthours is, that by the meanes of these descending wayne branches at both sydes of the boby, & the other ascending wayne branches on both sydes of y^e belly, there shoulde be great communitie & fellowship betweene the brests in women, and the Matric or the Wombe.

For doubtlesse by common experience, ye may see that when y^e time of conception in women is, & that by this meanes the termes be stopped, then as the termes do deminish & waxe lesse, so dooth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe every day more & more, as who myght say that the superfluitie of blood, wonte at other tymes to voyde in the name of *Termes*, now at this time by the prouidence and prouision of nature, is
retayn

retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuered and destinate another way, that is to saye, sent from the baynes of the Matrix, part thereof vpward, by the forenamed ascending bayne branches, at theyr handes agayne receiued and naturally attracted by the other descending breast baynes, through whom it is carped into the brestes, where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into Whyte milke, being before red blood, redy now prepared to nouryshe the chyld. When nature shal sende it into the worlde.

Agayne, so long as the woman getteth sucke to the childe, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very litle or no quantitie. These be euidences that there should be great familiaritie betweene the Matrix and the brestes, forsomuche as the ebbing of the one, is the flowyng of the other: wherefore Physitions sometymes, when the floures issue more vehemently then needeth, they set boryng glasses vnder the

The first booke.

brestes, meaning thereby to reuert and
returne bpwarde, the matter enclined
to muche downwarde: the which prac-
tise how much it preuaileth, I wil not
here dispute. Yet in this matter to dis-
cusse the very veritie as neare as reason
and the knowledge of Anothomie wyll
gene leaue, ye shal not vnderstande my
sayinges that I shoulde meane that al-
wayes when the termes stop beneath
by any colde, thought, or other occasi-
ons, by and by the same blood to sty-
e and mount vp into the brestes, & there
to become mylke, for the contrary here-
of is dayly seene. For mooste commonly
they in whom these termes do stop, for
any other cause then conception, the su-
perfluous blood retayned in the bodye,
and in the baynes wandryng, causeth
to the partie great headache, taketh a-
way theyr stomacke, and engendreth di-
uers other inconueniences, neither in
the meane while is there any thing the
more mylke in the brestes.

wherefore ye may wel say, that the
cause

cause of plentie of milke in the womans brestes in time of her being with chyld, and much more afterwarde, commeth cheefly by a priuie naturall instinction, whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at that tyme more then at anye other, to drawe vnto it selfe greater abundance of blood, conuerting and altering the same by the proprietie of the place, into conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenishe the brest the Termes to be by any occasion stopped beneath, but there must also concurre the attractive power, inlet in the brestes to drawe the sayde blood (matter at other times of the Termes) Without which attraction, be the Termes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the brestes be nothing the fuller, yf it chance that this attractive power halte, or be not able to attract sufficient matter to make mylke vpon for the Infant, then phisitōs are wont to helpe the debilitie of nature, with cuppyng glasses set vpon or vnder the brestes, or els with gentle

The first booke.

the attractiue emplasters appllied to the same places.

And although that into the brestes do resort great store of other waynes, some descending fro the waynes of the shoulders, and other some from the waynes passing by the arineholes into the armes and handes, the which in moysen and notable bygnesse, muche surmount the quantitie of the abouenamed descending brest waynes, as it may appeare evidently in many women which haue these waynes appearing in the superficie of theyr brestes immediately vnder the skin, very conspicuous and lightfull: yet notwithstanding it is thought by strong coniectures, that the mylke in the brestes shoulde be engendred only vpon the blood mountyng from the aforesayde assending Matrix waynes, and not vpon the blood conteyned in the other waynes, howe conspicuous so euer they be, so that the blood in them comprehended, serueth onely to the nourishment of the substance of the brestes

bestes them selues, & not to the maintenance of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner that nature vseth in circulatynge of the attracted blood, Whereby alteration is made frō one colour to another, woulde requyre a longer processe, the which for breuitie we wyl omit at this time, With many other problemes, doubtles, and difficulties concernynge the same. And so we make an ende of this first booke.

The first booke.

The declaration by letters of the figures folowyng, wherein be set forth to the eye, euery part in woman, mentioned in this booke before: VVhich in the former printinges hath ben corrupted, but nowe truely set forth.

C The first figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and characters of the same.

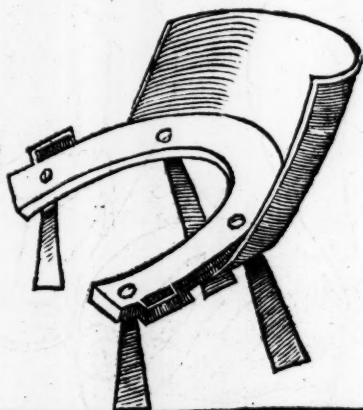


In this first figure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body, laid on the ground, whose Peritonium is opened with the muscles of the Abdomen, & turned ouer toward the inside, accor dyng to the vse of cutting, & afterwarde we haue

cut away all the bowels or entrayles from Mesenterium, the straght entrayle beyng yet leste in the bodye, with also the whole Mesenterium, whose pannicles we haue here somewhat taken awaye, and set a portion from the other, that the nature of Mesenterium myght come to lyght, but this present figure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it myght so shewe the position of the Matrix or wombe, and the bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no parte of the sayde matrix or wombe beyng moued. For here is as yet no pannicle pluckt away from the matrix or wombe, but that all thynges are here yet whollye seene, lyke wyle as in women some.

*The double skin
at scyssh the
bowels & the
heart.*

THE BIRTH FYGVRES
THE WOMANS STOOLE
THE



II



I



The first booke.

The declaration by letters of the figures folowyng, where-
in be set forth to the eye, euery part in woman, menti-
oned in this booke before: VVhich in the former
printinges hath ben corrupted, but nowe
truely set forth.

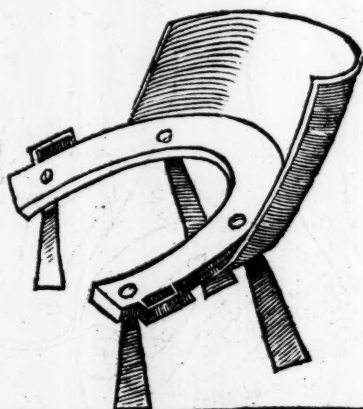
C The first figure of the partes of women, with the declaration
and characters of the same.



In this first figure is
set forth the tronke or
stocke of a womans bo-
dy, laid on the ground,
whose Peritonium is
opened with the mus-
kels of the Abdomen,
& turned ouer toward
the inside, accor dyng
to the vse of cutting, &
afterwarde we haue
cut away all the bowels or
entrayles from Me-
senterium, the straght entrayle
beyng yet lefte
in the bodye, with also the whole Mesenterium,
whose pannicles we haue here some what taken
awaye, and set a portion from the other, that
the nature of Mesenterium myght come to lyght,
but this present figure is for this cause principal-
ly declared and set forth, that it myght so be we
the position of the Matrix or wombe, and the
bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no parte
of the sayde matrix or wombe beyng moued.
For here is as yet no pannicle pluckt away from
the matrix or wombe, but that all thynges are
here yet wholl ye seene, lyke wyse as in women
some.

*The double skin
of scynus the
bare of the
heart.*

THE BIRTH FYGVRES
THE WOMANS STOOLE
THE



II



I



THE BYRTHE

III



IIII



V



VI

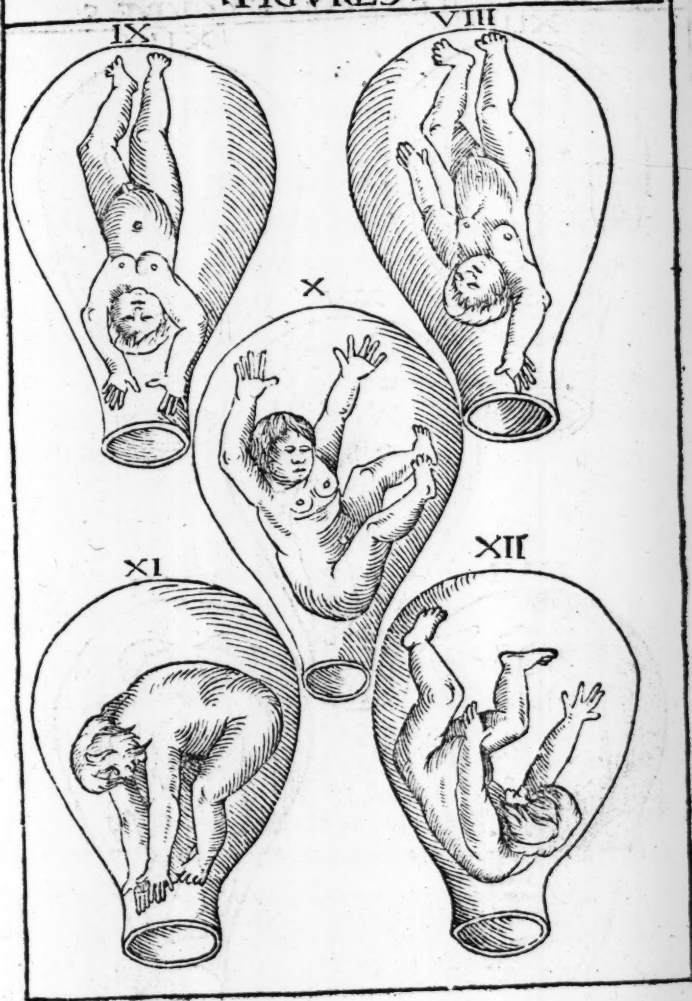


VII



These all bones
helped folio
62. 63. 64. 65
66. 67

·FYGVRES ·



THE BYRTHE FYGVRES

XIII



XIIII



XV



XVI



XVII



some what fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels beyng taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be vexed and kylled with long sicknesse, and become most leanest, then they shewe no kynde of procelle of vessels, but lesse the pannicles or thynne couerynges be separated asunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of Peritonium.

EE. A part of Mesenterium, knyttting the thynne intrayles to the backe.

FF. Here is noted another pannicle of Mesenterium, plucked from the other whiche we haue marked with G and G. But both the pannicles do shewe the order of the vessels of Mesenterium, and order of the karnels put betweene the distributions of the vessels.

H H. In this part of Mesenterium, the entrayle Colon was committed and set to, where it was nyghest to the straght gut.

I And in this part of Mesenterium, dyd consyst and stande the begynnyng of the intralle Colon, or his continuaunce with the thynne intrayles, and also the blynde gut.

K. The straght gut beyng there cut of where Colon dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knyttting togeather of the hode bone, with the lowest turnyng soynt of the loynes.

L. The former seate of the bottome of the matrix, from whence is nothing perceiued pluckt away.

M. The ryght stone or testicle in a woman.

N. The

The first booke.

N The left stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entirely seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceiued, and it is for this cause that we haue in such manner set forth the ryght stone: for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle bringeth downe the seede vessels of a woman, which do spring from Peritoneum: but we haue vncouered the lefte testicle of that pannicle, with the hande only without anye knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle dooth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in anye parte thereof, but lyeth there on lyfe.

O A pannicle springyng and growyng forth from the right seat of Peritoneum, & committing the ryght testicle with the seede vessels on this side, and those vessels whiche infolde the hygher seate of the Matrix to the backe, conteynyng together the Matrix or wombe, and afterwarde with the pannicle of the other syde, constitutyng the seconde cote of the Matrix.

P This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne forth fleshy fibres or thynne skynnes, constitutyng the ryght Muske of the Matrix, or wombe.

Q With these characters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and like to that pannicle, which the foresayd **OO** dyd poynt to be.

R S The former part of the necke of the Matrix, couered as yet, betweene R and S with that cote whiche

which ʒ partes of Peritoneū offer vnto it, which
bryng forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and doo
knitte it to Peritoneum: but the space beyng be-
tweene R and S, doth shewe the largenesse of the
necke of the Matrix. And the wrynckles whiche
are seene here, are they whiche the necke of the
Matrix fallng into it selfe, not stretched forth
agayne, doth shew in the cutting.

T The bladder whose hinder part is here cheefe-
lye seene, for we haue so caste our eye in the de-
claration and setting forth of this figure, as
though we woulde principally beholde in the
body beyng prostrate and layde along, the hynder
seate of the bladder, whiche loketh towarde
the Matrix.

For yf ye wyl suppose and imagine this bodye
of a woman, to be set byrpyght, as that whiche
next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke otherwyle then
the thing is, that the bottome of the Matrix is
set forth much higher then the bladder.

V This is a portion of the Matryll, deliuered in
the cutting from Peritoneum, and turned ouer
together with the vessels seruing properly to
the chyld.

X A portion of a bayne goyng from the Nauell
to the lyuer,

Y A way goyng from the hyghest seate or place
of the bottome of the bladder, partaynyng vnto
the Nauell, and bryngyng from thence the brine
of the chyld, betweene his seconde and the in-
nermost infolder.

Ket & She we

The first booke

Ket & She we two artyres creeping forth hither from the Nauell, by the sydes of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the branches of the great artire, going principally to the holes of the bones about the priuite members.

The declaration of the seconde figure of the members of women, and of the characters of the same.



We haue here taken away the skin from the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates myght, as nygh as may be, be set before the eyes: & after ward we haue cutte awaye the venterle with the bowels, and also Me-
lenterium and the splene, leauyng the strayght entrayle in this place vnmedled with, as well as we dyd in the figure before. And moreover, we haue as it were, taken away from the vtermost cote whiche Peritonium gaue vnto it, cutting away also all the pannicles, that the vessels carrying forth the substance and matter of seede to the stones, and also the vessels carrying awaye the seede from thence to the Matrix, shoulde appeare and be seene. Also we haue turned ouer the bladder downewarde on the lesse syde, lyke wyle breaking

minimus splenis, R. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 841. 842. 843. 844. 845. 846. 847. 848. 849. 850. 851. 852. 853. 854. 855. 856. 857. 858. 859. 860. 861. 862. 863. 864. 865. 866. 867. 868. 869. 870. 871. 872. 873. 874. 875. 876. 877. 878. 879. 880. 881. 882. 883. 884. 885. 886. 887. 888. 889. 890. 891. 892. 893. 894. 895. 896. 897. 898. 899. 900. 901. 902. 903. 904. 905. 906. 907. 908. 909. 910. 911. 912. 913. 914. 915. 916. 917. 918. 919. 920. 921. 922. 923. 924. 925. 926. 927. 928. 929. 930. 931. 932. 933. 934. 935. 936. 937. 938. 939. 940. 941. 942. 943. 944. 945. 946. 947. 948. 949. 950. 951. 952. 953. 954. 955. 956. 957. 958. 959. 960. 961. 962. 963. 964. 965. 966. 967. 968. 969. 970. 971. 972. 973. 974. 975. 976. 977. 978. 979. 980. 981. 982. 983. 984. 985. 986. 987. 988. 989. 990. 991. 992. 993. 994. 995. 996. 997. 998. 999. 1000.

breakyng the way oz conduite whiche beareth
foorth the brine to it from the ryght hydney, that
the insertion of the wayes of bearyng foorth the
bryne to the bladder myght appeare, and that
the bladder shoulde not let the inspection oz sight
of the Matrix oz wombe. Last of all, we haue
cut away from this figure a portion of the bones
about the priuie members, that the necke of the
Matrix and of the bladder myght the more com-
modiously be seene.

A A Waynes runnyng foorth oftentymes to the
teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to
the skynne, which is brought ouer the heygth of
the shoulder.

B Waynes spryngyng from those baynes whiche
are led foorth by the arme hole to the hande.

C The principal body of the teate.

DD Barnels and fatnesse spread abrode euerye
where on the barnelly body, marked with C.

E F G H The hynder outsyde oz insyde of the for-
mer seat of Peritoneum out ward. For the former
region of Peritoneum is here bowed bpward and
downeward towarde the syde.

I K Portions of Waynes and also Artyres, cree-
pyng foorth downeward, vnder the brest bone
from the throte.

L The gybolyte oz swelling seate of the lyuer.

M The holow part of the lyuer is here also some-
what seene.

N A small portion oz peece of the bayne goyng
from the Pauell to the lyuer.

O The stocke of vena porta is here cut away, with

It

the

The mother's veins.
See quibus p[ar]tibus nos Joh[ann]is Jo[ann]is R[ati]s
rebus ad insulam p[ar]tem. Anon.

The first booke.

the vessels brought vnto it.

P The holowe bayne.

Q The great artyle.

R The rootes of the artyles goyng to the ventricle, the lpuer, the splene, the caule, and to the bowelles.

S The begynnyng of a bayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kidney.

T The bayne and artyle whiche bryngeth the whayse humour to the ryght kidney.

V The bayne and artyle whiche bryngeth the whayse humour into the left kidney.

X The begynnyng of the bayne goyng into the fat coate of the ryght kidney.

Y The former seate of the right kidney.

Z The former seate of the left kidney.

aa The way that bryngeth the brine from the ryght kidney into the bladder, but at the nethermost a is broken away but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder, marked with b.

b The way that carryeth forth the brine from the ryght kidney into the bladder.

cc The way that carryeth forth the brine from the left kidney into the bladder.

dd The ryght seede bayne, whose begynnyng the hygher d doth shewe.

e The seede bayne going to the left testicle.

f The springyng forth of the artyles of seede.

g The ryght seede artyle.

h The left seede artyle.

ikl The former part of the bottome of the Matrix,

trix, and i sheweth the ryght blunt angle oꝝ coꝝ-
ner of the sayde bottome, where k sheweth the
left, but l sheweth the region oꝝ place of the Ma-
trix, where the mouth of his bottome consysteth,
and where his necke beginneth.

m This is the strayght gut. And that I may the
lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with
many letters, I wil at this present affixe the Ra-
characters but on the one syde only.

n A portion of the bayne and Artire of seede,
whiche do go to the hypper syde of the bottome of
the wombe.

o Portions of the baynes and Artire of seede
goyng to the testicle, and there ioynnyng and go-
yng togeather, and constituting.

p A body lyke the spire of a steeple, and this let-
ter p doth poynt vs the roote oꝝ fundacion of
this body, whereas the sayde roote oꝝ fundacion
is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q From that sayd body such vessels runne forth
into the tunicles, committing and ioynnyng the
testicle to Peritoneum.

r The former face oꝝ part of the testicle.

s The begynnyng of the vessel whiche beareth
foorth the seede from the testicle into the Ma-
trix.

tt The bowynges and turnynges ouer agayne of
the vessel which beareth foorth the seede, which
turnynges the sayde vessel maketh round about
the sydes of the testicle.

xx The goyng foorth of the vessel whiche carryeth
foorth the seede of the Matrix.

The first booke.

xx The necke of the Matrix.

y Vessels foldyng in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or wombe, and the necke also of the same.

z A bayne commyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karacter also noteth the incertion of the wayes of the vrine.

μβ The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.

* The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.

α In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.

• Small skinnie portions of fleshe of the necke of the mouth or openyng of the wombe or Matrix, and the smal pyllokes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke therof, neede here no speciall declaration with Karacters.

β The roote of the Arterie, goyng into the lowest part of Mesenterium.

α Vessels which do assende and ryle bywarde to the Muskles of the Abdomen, from the baynes and Artyres whiche do goe into the legges.

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the thirde figure of women.



His present figure sheweth the Matrix or wombe, with the thynne euerynges which do binde it to Peritoneum, cutt forth from the body, and the

the necke thereof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or openyng of the bottome of the Matrix dooth here manypestly shewe it selfe. And we haue lyke wyse so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownesse of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of bryne, are here manypestly seene.

A The former face of the bottome of the matrix, being not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

BB The necke of the Matrix.

C A part of the bottome of the Matrix, swelling forth into the vpper seat of the necke of the matrix, in maner of a kirkel.

D The mouth of the bottome of the matrix.

EE A pannicle knittynge the matrix to *Peritoneum*, and conteynyng his vesselles.

F The left testicle of the matrix.

G The bayne and artire of seede.

H Portion of the seede bayne and artyre, commyng to the vpper seate of the bottome of the matrix.

I A portion of the seede bayne and artyre, commyng to the testicle.

K The vessell caryng the seede from the testicle into the matrix.

L The holownesse of the bladder.

M The insertion of the wayes of the bryne.

N Here hangeth forth a litle peece of the wayes of the bryne.

The first booke.

The declaration of the karacters of the fourth table of women.

c



All braunches runnyng
foorth into the pannicle, where
they are committed and ioyned
to Peritoncum.

A portion of the wayne and
artire going into þe testicle, fal-
lyng to the vpper seate of the bottome of the ma-
trix.

The commixtion and goyng togeather of the
seede bayne and artyre, that is lyke the spire of a
steeple, which we lyken to the braded baynes cal-
led Varices.

2 The left testicle.

44 The vessell carryng foorth the seede from the
testicle into the matrix.

v The blunte angle or corner of the bottome of
the matrix, in whom the vessell that byngeth
foorth the seede attempteth his insertion.

7 In this seate the bottome of the matrix is en-
ded into the necke thereof, and in this region or
place is the begynnyng of the mouth or opening
place thereof.

3 TV The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

6 Here the necke of the bladder is brought forth
into the necke of the matrix, and there endeth.

9 Those are vessels infoldyng the nether seate of
the bottome of the matrix, and also his necke.

77 The swellng bymmes at the mouth of the
necke of the matrix.

The

vv The wayes that bring the brine from the
raynes into the bladder.

cc The declaration of the Characters of the
b. bi. bii. and. biii. figures.



I have nowe divided
this fyfth table of the
wombe of Matric,
conteynyng a male
chylde on the former
syde, with a long sec-
tion of cutte, and ano-
ther whiche are quer-
thwart sette, remo-
ueng and takyng a-
way into the sydes,

partes of the coates of the bottomie of the Ma-
trix, yea euen from the uttermost infolder of the
chylde.

ABCD The inner syde of the layde infolder of
the Matrix, whiche before the section was
brought about and covered with the infolders of
the chylde.

EE The utter syde of the Matrix, and the high-
er E noteth the top of the ryght angle or corner
of the Matrix, brought forth bywarde and to-
ward the right syde, more then toward the left,
because it is a male chylde, whiche is in the wombe.

FF The fyfth or the uttermost infolder of the chylde.

GG The seconde infolder of the chylde is here

I iiii also

107 The first booke.

also a great part seene.

H A part of the necke of the Matrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a bayne and an Artire, whiche is principally distributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I Here is also yet left the ryght testicle, that the situation of it myght be seene and perceiued in women beyng with chylde.

The syxt Table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the Matrix, and not broken.

K The uttermost infolder of the chylde.

L The seconde infolder of the chylde, whiche forsomuche as it is transparent in maner of a pannie, it suffereth the childe (being wrapped in this thirde infolder) in it somewhat to be seene.

In the seuenth Table we haue diuided the utter and the seconde infolder of the chylde, with a long section or cutte, and we haue here expressed and shewed forth both the sayd infolders, taken away from the thirde infolder, and the thirde infolder also yet whole.

M The thirde or the inmost infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thinne that one may easily see through it, the forme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

N The

The first booke.

Naupll, whiche is betweene the Naupll and the
 ioyning together of the vessels with the thyde
 infolder, whiche is also brought forth with a
 great space betweene the shewing, where be
 certayne (as it were) knottes or swellnges, ac-
 cording to the number of the whiche knottes
 more or lesse, Mydwyes foolysly do prophesse
 eyther many or few childre to the woman, which
 of the learned men is taken but for a very fanta-
 sie, and woorthy of reprehention. And moreouer,
 when the chylde commeth forth (as it chaunceth
 sometymes) haupng that about his necke, they
 say that it is the same chylde destined to be hang-
 ed, with many other foolyshe conceytes, rather to
 be laughed at, then to be beleued.

The declaration of the Characters of the ninth figure of women.



N the ninth figure sheweth
 the Matrix cut forth of the bo-
 dy, beyng of that bygnesse as it
 was seene taken forth of a wo-
 man at the laste Anothomie,
 which I dyd see at the vniuersi-
 tie of Padua in Italie. And moreouer we haue
 so diuided and cutte asunder the bottome of the
 Matrix by the myddle, that the concavittie and
 hollowe bought within the same, myght be
 perceyued, and the thycke substance also of
 both the coates of the Matrix in women, when
 they

they be not with chylde.

AA BB The concauitie and holow bought of the bottome of the matrix.

CD A line somewhat after the maner of a seame called in Latine Scortum, which doth belong to the place wherein the testicle dooth lye, whiche swelleth somewhat forth into the bought of the bottome of the matrix.

EE The thicknes of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the matrix.

FF A portion of the innermer bottome of the matrix, swelling forth downewarde from the hygher seate of the matrix, into the holownesse and bought of the bottome.

GG The beginning of the necke or opening place of the bottome of the matrix.

HH The seconde or uttermer infolder of the bottome of the matrix, descended from Peritoncum.

II Here we haue reserued a portion on both the sydes of the thinne couerynges, descended from Peritoncum, and conteynyng the matrix.

K Here is also seene the substance of the necke of the matrix, because the cutting where with we diuided the bottome of the matrix, was begun at this place.

L A parte of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the matrix, casting forth into it the bryne. The swelling partes of Abdomen and whatsoeuer is els to be considered thereof, they may be sufficiently knownen without direction of Characters.

FINIS.

The second booke

Of the tyme of byrth. And whiche is called naturall
or vnnaturall.

Cap. i.



In the fyrst booke we haue
sufficientlye set forth and
described the maner, situa-
tion, and fourme of the Ma-
trix, wherein man is con-
ceyued, With dyuers other matters ap-
pendyng and concernyng the better vn-
derstandyng of the same. And now
here in this seconde booke, we wyl de-
clare the maner of the quytyng and de-
liueraunce of the Infant out of the mo-
thers wombe, With other thinges ther-
to apparteinyng. And first here in this
Chapter we wil declare the tokens and
signes whereby ye may perceyue whe-
ther the tyme of labour be neare or not:
For when the houre of labour appro-
cheth neare, these signes folowinge euer
more proceede and come before.

Tokens to
knowe whe-
ther tyme of
deliuerance
is neare.

Firste certayne dolours & paynes be-
gin to growe about the guttes, the na-
uell, and in the raynes of the backe, and
like

lyke wyse about the thyghes, and the other places being neare to the priue partes, which lyke wyse then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geneth a playne & euident token that the labour is neare.

But ye shall note that there is two manner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall.

Two sortes
of deliue-
rance.

Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashion.

The due season is most commonly after the ninth moneth, or about fortie weekes after the conception; although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the childe prooueth very wel. But suche as are borne in the eighth moneth, other they be dead before the byrth, or els lyue not long after.

The due fashion of byrth is this: first the head cometh forthwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body towards the feet; the face and forepart of the chylde beying towards the face and

The due fa-
shion of birth.

111.107. The second booke.

and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrste of the byrth figures: For as hath ben sayde alrebye in the fyrst booke, before the tyme of delyuerance, the chylde lyeth in the mothers wombe the head byward, and the feet downward, but when it shoulde be deliuered, it is turned cleane contrary, the head downward, the feet byward, and the face towardes the mothers belly, and that yf the byrth be natural. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be natural, the deliuerance is easie without long tarryng or tokyng for it.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is delyuered before her tyme, or out of due season, or after anye other fashion then is here spoken of before: As when both the legges procede first, or one alone, with both the handes by, or both downe, other els the one by and the other downe, and diuers other wise, as shalbe hereafter more clearely declared.

Of easie and breasie, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, and the causes of it: with the signes howe to knowe and foresee the same.

Chap. ii.



Very many be the perylles, daungers, and thronges, which chaunce to women in theyr labour, whiche also ensue and come in diuers wayes, and for dyuers causes, suche as I shall here declare.

Fyrst when the woman that labourereth is conceaued ouer young, as before xij. or. xlv. yeres of age (whiche chaunceth sometyme, though not very often) and that the passage be ouer anguste, straitte, or narrowe, other naturallye, or els for some disease and infirmite whiche may happen about that parte, as apostumes, pulshes, pyles, or blysters, and suche other. Through the whiche causes, nature can not (but with great dolour and payne) open and dilate it selfe, to the expellyng and deliuerance of

Many perils chauncing to women in their labour.

III. 107 The second booke.

of the childe. And sometyme the vesicke
oz bladder, oz other mirayles beyng a-
bout the Matrix oz wombe, be also a-
postumate and blystered, whiche beyng
greened, the Matrix oz wombe like wise,
for vicinitie and neighbourhead, is grie-
ued with them, & that hyndereth great-
lye the deliuerance. Also sometyme in
the fundement are hemorrhodes, oz pil-
les, and other pushes, chappynge oz
chynnes, whiche cause great payne. Also
hardnesse and difficultie oz byndyng of
the belly, whiche thynges for the greefe
and payne that ensueth of them, causeth
the woman to haue litle power to helpe
her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, yf the partie be weake
and of feble complexion, oz of nature be-
ry colde, oz to young, oz very aged, oz ex-
ceedyng grosse and fatte, oz contrary-
wise to spare and leane, oz that she ne-
uer had childe before, oz that she be over-
timorous and fearefull, diuers, way-
warde, oz suche one that wyll not be ru-
led, remouyng her selfe from one place
to

to another, all suche thynges causeth
the labour to be muche moze paynfull,
cruell, and dolorous, then it woulde o-
therwyle be. Also ye must vnderstand,
that generally the byrth of the man is
easier then the byrth of the female.

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and
greater groweth, then that it may easily
passe that narrow passage, or contrary-
wise, yf it be so faynt, weake, and tender,
that it can not turne it selfe, or doth it
very slowly, or if the woman haue two
chyl dren at once, other els that it with
the whiche she labourerh, be a monster:
as for example, yf it hath but one bodye
& two heades, as appeareth in the. xviij.
of the byrth figures, such as of late was
seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, when it proceedeth not in
due tyme, or after due fashon, as when
it cometh forth with both feete or
both knees togeather, or els with one
foote onely, or with both feete downe-
wardes, and both handes vpwardes,
other els (the whiche is most perilous)

Ca-20
Da-lut
Uter-milus

The second booke.

sidelong, arselong, oz backlong, other
els (hauyng two at a byrth) both pro-
ceede with their feete fyrst, oz one with
his feete, and the other with his head,
by those and dyuers other wayes the
woman sustayneth great dolour, paine,
and anguysh.

Item, yf the woman suffer abor-
ment, that is to say, byrning forth her
chylde in the .iiij. oz. v. moneth after the
conception, Whiche is before the due
tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne
to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the
porte of the wombe is so firmly and
strongly enclosed, that vnneth the poynt
of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the chylde be dead in the mothers
belly, it is a very perillous thing, for so
much as it can not be easlyly turned, ney-
ther can it welde oz helpe it selfe to come
forth, oz if y^e childe be sicke oz weakned so
that it can not for feeblenes help it selfe.

To knowe
whether the
chylde be
weake in the
mothers
belly.

The which thing may be foreleene &
knownen by these tokens: If the woman
with childe haue been long sicke before
her

her labour, yf she haue ben soze lasked, if after her conception she haue had dayly and vnwontly her flowres, yf strayght after one moneth vpon the conception, her brestes yelde any mylke, yf the child styre not, ne mooue at suche tyme as is conuenient for it, these be argumentes & tokens that it shoulde be very weake. By what tokens ye shall knowe it is dead, I shal shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great perill in labouring, when the secondine or latter birth is ouer firme or strong, and will not soone riue or breake asunder, so that the child may haue his easy coming forth. And contrarywyle, when it is ouer weake, slender, or thin, so that it breaketh asunder before that the childe be turned, or apt to issue forth, for then the humours whiche are collect & geathered together about this secondine or seconde byrth, passe away sooner then they should do, & the birth shal lack his due humidities and moistures, which shuld cause it the eyselyer to proceede, & with lesse payne.

Perill in the
secondine.

The seconde booke.

Excesse of
heate or colde
greatly hyn-
dereth the
labour.

The birth also is hyndered by ouer-
much colde, or ouermuche heate, for in
ouermuche colde, the passage and al o-
ther powers of the labouryng Woman
be coarcted and made narrower, then
they woulde otherwyle be. Lykelwyle
ouermuch heate debiliteth, weakeneth,
and faynteth both the Woman and the
childe, so that neyther of them in that
case can wel weld or helpe them selues
for fayntnesse.

And further if the Woman haue vled
to eate commonly such meate or frutes
which do exicate or drie, and constraine
or binde, as Medlers, Chestnuts, and
all sowre frutes, as Crabbes, Choke-
peres, Quinces, and suche other, with
ouermuche vse of Vergens, and suche
lyke sowre sauces, with Rile, Myll, and
many other thynges, al this shal great-
lye hynder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the
fifth moneth folowynge the conception,
or to bathe in such water where Aloome
is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges
whiche

Whiche do coarete and conſtrayne, or if ſhee haue been oftentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at eaſe, or yf ſhe haue been kept ouer hungry and thirſtie, or haue vſed ouer muche watche and wa- kyng: either if ſhe vſed a litle before her labour thynges of great odour, ſmell or ſauour, for ſuche thynges (in manye mens opinions) attract and drawe by- ward the mother or Matrix, the which is great hynderaunce to the byrth.

Alſo yf the woman feelee payne onely in the backe and aboue the navel, and not vnder, it is a ſigne of harde labour: lykelyle if ſhe were wont in tymes paſ- ſed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euident and lykelyhod of great la- bour alwayes in the byrth.

Nowe ſignes and tokens of an expe- dite and eaſy deliuerance, be ſuche as be contrary to all thoſe that haue ben rehearſed before. As for example, when the woman hath ben wont in tymes paſſed eaſily to be deliuered, and that in her labour ſhe feelee but litle thron- g

Tokens of
eaſy deliue-
rance.

The second booke.

oz doloꝝ, oz though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styl in the vpper partes, but discende alwaies downwardes to the neather partes oz bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all paynesfull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good speede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, muche stirring of the chylde in the mothers belly, all the thꝛonges and paynes tomling in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and myghtie of nature, such as can wel and strongly helpe her selfe to the deliuerance of the birth. And againe, euyl signes be those, when she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulses beate and labour ouer sore, and that she her selfe in the labouring faynt and solwe, these be vnluckie and moztall signes.

Howe a woman with child shal vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue harde labour.

Cap. iij.

For succour and helpe them that are in such difficult peril of labour, as we haue spoken of before, ye muste obserue, kepe, and marke those thynges that we shal (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter folowynge.

Fyrst the woman with chylde muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must eschue & forbear al such occasions which may hynder the byrth, to the vttermost of her power, the whiche occasions we rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any suche thyng which can not be auoyded, forsomuche as it commeth by nature, or by long continuance and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the whiche may somewhat asswage it, molifie it, or make it more easie or tollerable, so that it hinder the byrth so much the lesse.

But yf it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumation

R. iiii

chaunce

How the labour may be made more easie.

The second booke.

chance about the mother or the priue part, or about the vesicke or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and suche lyke, the whiche thynges may cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be deliuered or discharged. In these cases it behoueth such thynges to be looked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some expert Surgeon.

Also if the woman be ouermuch constipat or bounde, most commonly she must vse, the moneth before her labour, suche thinges the whiche may lenifie, mollifie, dissolue, and lose the belly, as apples froyed with suger, taken fasting in the mornynge, and after that a draught of pure wine alone, or els tempered with the iuyce of sweete & very ripe apples.

Also to eat figges in the mornynge fasting, and at nyght, loseth wel the belly.

If these profite not, Cassia fistula taken iii. or.iiii. drams one halfe houre before dinner, shal lose the belly without peril.

Againe

Agayne, in this case she must refrayne from al suche thinges as do harden, re-
frayne, and constipat, as meates broy-
led or roasted, and ryce, hard egges, biese,
chestnattes, and al sowre frutes, and
suche lyke.

Also if further necessitie require, she
may receiue a clyster, but it must be ve-
ry gentle and easie, made of a pynte of
the broth of a Chycken, or other tender
fleshe, thereto puttyng so muche course
suger or hony, as may make it reasona-
bly sweete, & halfe a spooneful of whyte
salt. Or for the poore woman may be
made a clister of a pint of water, where-
in hath ben sod mallowes or holyoke,
with hony and salt, as before. She may
vse also some other easie and temperate
purgation, to molifie and lose her with-
al, as Mercury sodden with flesh in po-
tage, and diuers such other, or els a sup-
politer tempered with lope, larde, or the
yolkes of egges.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour
drawyng neare) she waxe faynt or syck-
lye,

Things to
lose the belly

Where with
to comfort the
woman in
her labour.

The second booke.

lye, then must ye comfort her with good comfortable meate, drinke, holosome and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do al luche thynges the which can make her apt and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such thynges the which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth may the more freely proceede, and that cheefly in the yonger women. The elder women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse whot and moyst thyngs, which haue propertie to lenifie and souple, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outwarde fomentations, bathinges, suppositoies, and annoyntmentes.

Anoyntmentes
to souple.

Anoyntmentes wherewith ye may souple the priuie place, be these, Hennes grete, Duckes grete, Goose grete, also oyle Olive, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscolite of holyoke, and such other: & for drynke, let her vse good rype wine mixed with water: also there

The second booke. Fol. lii.

there muste be a consyderation in the
dietynge of the woman, that she maye
vse suche thynges the whiche may moy-
sten her, and not make her fatte. Con-
trariwys, let her auoyde suche thynges
the whiche shoulde exicate, drye, con-
strayne, or coarct her, and that all the
moneth before her labour. But about
ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele a-
nye payne or greefe) let her vse euerye
day to washe or bathe her with warme
water, in the whiche also that she tarve
not ouerlong in bathyng for weaknyng
of her, and therein let her stande, so that
the water come aboue the Hauell a ly-
tle, and also seethe in the water Ma-
lowes, Holioke, Camomell, Mercurie,
Maydenheare, Lyneseede, Fenegreke
seede, and suche other thynges whiche
haue vertue to mollifie and softe. And
yf it be so, that for weakenesse of the bo-
dy she may not endure this bathyng in
warme water, then with a sponge
or other cloth dypped in the foresayde
bath, let her sokyngly washe her feete,
her

Bathes to
lose & gentle-
lye to open
the body.

103. 307. The second booke.

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the which thynges shall greatly profyte to her. But in such tyme beware ye come not in the common hot houses, for they would cause you to be feeble and faynt, which were yll in this case.

Annoynt-
mentes to
soyle.

And when ye are thus bathed or washed, then shall it be very conuenient for you to annoynt with the foresayde greces and oyles, your backe, belly, Manell, sydes, and suche places as are neare to the priuie partes. Furthermore, it shalbe greatly profytable for her to conuey inwarde into the priuie part these foresayde oyles or greces with a sponge, or other thyng made for the purpose, she lying bpryght, the muddes of her bodye most hyest, so that it may the better remaine within her, and that cheefely yf the Matrix be drye, other els the partie very leane and spare.

Sweete
sumes.

It shalbe also very profitable for her to suffume the nether places with Buske, Ambre, Gallia Muscata, whiche put on embres, yeeld a goodly sauour, by the whiche

Whiche the neather places open themselves, and drawe downewarde.

Also as I sayde before, she must take good hede to her diet, that she take thinges the which may comfort and strengthen the body, feeding not ouer much of any thing, and to drynke pleasaunt and wel sanouring wine, or other drynke, also moderately to exercise the body in doing some thing, styring, mouing, going, or standydg, more then otherwyle she was woont to do, these thinges further the byrth, and make it the easier, and this is the manner of diet the whiche we aduise the woman to kepe the month before her labour, or longer.

Another diet there is, the whiche she ought to obserue in the tyme of labour, when the stormes and thronges begyn to come on, & the humours whiche yet hitherto haue remained about the Matrrix or mother collected, nowe begyn to flowe forth, and this maner of dyet consysteth in two sortes. First that such thinges be procured & had in redynesse,

Whiche

that is to
be done whē
the tyme of
labour is
come.

The seconde booke.

Whiche may cause the byrth oꝛ labour to be very easy. Secondly, to withstand, defende, and to put away (so neare as may be) the instant and present dolours. And as touching this poynt, it shalbe very profitable foꝛ her, foꝛ the space of an houre to syt styl, then (rising agayne) to go vp and downe a payze of stayres, crying and reaching so loude as she can, so to styꝛe her selfe.

And also it shalbe verry good foꝛ a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her bꝛeath, foꝛ because that thꝛough that meanes, the guttes and intrayles be thꝛust together, and depressed downewarde. Also it shalbe very good to receiue some medicine to pꝛouoke the birth, of the which we wyll speake moze hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceiuethe the Matrice oꝛ Moother to ware laxe oꝛ loose, and to be dissolued, and that the humours issue foꝛth in great plentie, she shal it be meete foꝛ her to sit downe, leanyng backward in maner vpright. Foꝛ the which purpose in some regions (as

(as in Fraunce & Germany) the Midwifes haue stoles for the nonce, whiche beyng but lowe, and not hye from the grounde, be made so compassewyle and caue or holowe in the middes, that that may be receyued from vnderneath whiche is looked for, and the backe of the stoole leaning backward, receyueth the backe of the woman: the fashion of the whiche stoole, is set in the beginning of the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the time of labour is come, in the same stoole ought to be put many clothes or cloutes in the backe of it, the which the Midwyfe may remoue from one syde to another, accordyng as necessitie shal require. The midwife her selfe shal sit before the labouryng woman, & shall diligently obserue and waite, how much, and after what meanes the child styreth it selfe: also shal with her handes, first annointed with the oyle of Almondess, or the oyle of white Lillies, rule and dyrecte euery thyng as shall seeme best.

Also

The second booke.

The Mid-
wyfe must
geue com-
fortable
wordes to
the partie
trauayling.

Also the Midwyfe muste enstruct and comfort the partie, not onely refreshing her with good meate and drinke, but also with sweete wordes, geuyng her good hope of a speedefull deliuerance, encouragynge and enstomakyng her to patience and tolleraunce, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as shee may, also strekyng gentilly with her handes her belly aboue the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downeward.

But and yf the woman be any thing grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lye groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downeward, annoynting also the priuie partes with the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Midwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straightes (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe wel to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Midwyfe aboue
all

all thynges take heede of that the com-
pel not the woman to labour before the
birth come fordward, and she be it selfe.

For before that tyme, all labour is in
bayne, labour as much as ye lyst. And
in this case many tymes it commeth to
passe, that the partie hath laboured so
loze before the time, that when she shuld
labour in deede, her might and strength
is spent before in bayne, so that she is
not now able to helpe her selfe, and that
is a perillous case.

To labour
much before
the due time,
doth but fe-
ble the wo-
man, and no
thing profit.

Furthermore, when the Secondine
or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth
is wrapped and conteyned) dooth once
appeare, then may ye knowe that the
labour is at hand, wherefore if the same
secondine breake not of his owne kinde,
it shalbe the Midwifes part and office,
with her nayles easily and gentelly to
breake and rent it, or yf that may not
conueniently be done, then rayse bp be-
twene your fingers a peece of it, and cut
it of with a payre of sheares, or sharpe
knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

The second booke.

With the cut. This done, by and by ensueth consequently the flux and flowe of humours, of the whiche I spake before, and then next foloweth immediately the byrth.

But yf it so channce that the Secundine should be cut by the Midwyfe, and all the watery part issued and spent before due time & necessitie should require it, so that the priue passage be leste erected and drye, the byrth not yet appearing, by this meanes the labour should be hindered and letted. In this case ye shall annoynt and molifie that priue passage with the oyle of Whyte Lillies, or some of the greses spoken of before, fyrst warmed, and so conueyed into the priue partes, the whiche thynges wyll cause the way to be slypperye, souple, and easye for the byrth to passe. But cheefely in these difficulties should profite the white of an egge, togeather with the yolke powdred into the same place, whiche shoulde cause it to be most slypperye and slydyng, and supplie the
roome

roome of the natural humors spent
before.

And yf it be so, that the byrth be of a
great growth, and the head sticke in the
commynge forth, then must the Myd-
wyfe helpe all that she may, With her
hande fyrst annoynted with some oyle,
openyng and enlargyng the way, that
the issue may be the freer. Lyke wyse
must be done yf she beare two chylde
at once. And all this is spoken of the
naturall byrth, when that fyrst proce-
deth the head, and then the rest of the
body ordnatelye, as ye may see in the
fyrst of the byrth figures folowynge.

The head
proceedyng
fyrst.

ii. But when the byrth cometh not
naturally, then must the Mydwyfe do
all her diligence and payne (yf it may be
possible) to turne the byrth tenderlye
with her annoynted handes, so that it
may be reduced agayne to a naturall
byrth. As for example: Sometyme it
chanceth the child to come the legges &
both armes & handes downward, close
to the sydes fyrst forth, as appeareth

The legges
& both han-
des downe,
proceedyng
fyrst.

The second booke.

in the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the mydwylfe must do all her payne With tender handlyng and annoyntynge to receiue foorth the chylde, the legges beyng styl close together, and the handes likewise remaynyng, as appeareth in the sayde seconde figure.

Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Mydwylfe shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst foorth, bywardes agayne by the bellywarde, so that the head myght descende downeward by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturallie agayne and without peryll myght it proceede and come foorth as the fyrst.

3
The third
of the byrth
figures.

iii. Agayne, sometime the byrth cometh foorth with both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lyfted by aboue the head of the child, and this is the perillous manner of byrth that is, as appeareth in the third of the birth figures. And here must the Mydwylfe do what she may to turne the byrth (yf it may be possible)

possible) to the first figure, and yf it wyl not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the seconde figure. But yf this also wyl not be, then receyue the feete as they come forth, and bynde them with some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly loose out the byrth til al be come forth, and this is a very ieopardous labour.

iiij. Also sometyme the byrth cometh forth with one foote onely, the other being lift bpwarde, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouring woman to lay her vpryght vppon her backe, holdyng vp her thyghes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her bodye, then let the Midwyfe with her hande returne in agayne the foote that commeth out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the woman that laboureth, to styre and moue her selfe, so that by the mouyng and styrryng, the byrth maye be turned the head downeward, and so

The. iiij.
figure.

4

The seconde booke.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then to set the woman in the stoole agayne, and to doo as ye did in the fyrste figure. But yf it be so, that notwithstanding the mothers styrryng and mouyng, the byrth do not turne, then must the Midwyfe with her hande softly fetthe out the other legge whiche remainned be hynde, euermore takyng heede of this, that by handlyng of the chylde, she doo not remoue ne set out of theyr place the two handes hangyng downewarde towarde the feete.

5 The. v. fi.
curr.

v. Lyke wyfe sometyme it commeth to passe, that the syde of the chylde cometh forwarde, as appeareth in the. v. figure, and then must the Midwyfe doo so, that it may be returned to his naturall fassion, and so to come forth.

6 The. vi. fi.
curr.

vi. Also sometyme the chylde cometh soorth the feete forwarde, the legges beyng abrode, as in the. vi. figure, and then must the Midwyfe see, that the feete and legges may be ioyned together, and so to proceede and come forth,
euer

euermore regardyng the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come with one of the knees The. vii. figure. 7
or both forwarde, as in the. vii. figure,
then must the Wydwyfe put vp the
birth, til such times as the legges & feete
come ryght forth, & them to do as afore.

viii. When the chylde commeth head- The. viii. figure. 8
long, one of the handes commyng out
and appearyng before, as in the. viii. fi-
gure, then let the byrth proceede no fur-
ther, but let the Wydwyfe put in her
hande, and tenderlye by the shoulders
thruste in the byrth agayne, so that the
hande may be resetled in his place, and
the byrth to come forth ordynately and
naturally, as in the fyrst figure: But yf
by this meanes the hande come not to
his conuenient place, then let the wo-
man lye vpryght with her thighes and
belly vpwordes, and her head downe-
wardes, so that by that meanes it may
be brought to passe, and then byng her
to her seate agayne.

ix. But yf it proceede with both The. ix. figure. 9
handes

Liii

The seconde booke.

handes forwardes, then must ye lyke-
wise do as afore, by the shoulders, thru-
styng it backe agayne, vntyl suche tyme
as the hands lie close to the sides, & so to
come forth, as appeareth in the. ix. figure.

10

The. x. fi-
gure.

x. But When it commeth arswarde,
as in the. x. figure may be seene, then
must the Wydwyfe With her hands re-
turne it agayne, vntyll suche tyme that
the birth be turned, the legges and feete
forwarde : other els, yf it may be so, it
were best that the head might come for-
warde, and so naturally to proceede.

11

The. xi. fi-
gure.

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and
come forth fyrst With the shoulders, as
in the. xi. figure, then must ye sayre and
softlye thurst it backe agayne by the
shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head
come forwarde.

12

The. xii. fi-
gure.

31

xii. But When the byrth commeth
foorth With both the handes and both
the feete at once, as in the. xii. figure,
then must the Wydwyfe tenderly take
the childe by the head, and returne the
legges bpwarde, & so to receiue it forth.

xiii. And

xiii. And When it commeth brestward The. xiii. figure.
as in the. xiii. figure, the legges and handes bydyng behynde, then let the Wydwyfe take it by the feete, or by the head, whiche that shalbe most apt and commodious to come forwarde, returnyng the rest vpywarde, & so to receiue it forth: but if it may behedlong, that shalbe best.

xiiii. Nowe sometyme it chaunceth The. xiiii. figure.
the woman to haue two at a burden, & that both proceede together headlong, as in the. xiiii. figure, and then must the Wydwyfe receiue the one after the other, but so, that she let not slyppe the one, whilst she taketh the fyrst.

xv. If both come forth at once with The. xv. figure.
their feete forward, then must the Wydwyfe be very diligent to receiue first the one, and then the other, as hath ben shewed before.

xvi. When the one commeth headlong, the other footewise, then must the Wydwyfe helpe the birth that is molle nearest the issue, and it that commeth footelong (if she can) to returne it vpon the

13

14

15

16

The seconde booke.

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng euer heede that the one be not noysome to the other in receiuyng foorth of eyther of them.

And to be short, let the mydwylfe of tentymes annoynt and molifie the way and passage with some of the foresayd oyntmentes, to make the womans labour so muche the easyer, and haue the lesse trauaile and payne. And yf there chaunce to be anye Apostume or diseale about those places in this tyme, by such annoyntyng to alaye and swage the payne, so that for the tyme it may be the lesse greefe to the partie, as I spake before also. And for them that be in this case it shalbe best to lye grouelyng, as I sayde of the grosse, fatte, and fleshy woman.

¶ Remedies and medicines by the whiche the labour may be made more tolerable, easie, and without great payne.

Cap. b.

The



he thinges which help the
birth & make it moze easie,
are these. Fyrst the woman
that laboureth must eyther
sit groueling, oz els bpright,
leanyng backward, accorbyng as it shal
seeme commodious & necessarye to the
partie, oz as she is accustomed. And in
Wynter oz colde weather, the chamber
wherin she laboureth must be warmed,
but in sōmer oz hot wether, let in y^e aire
to refreshe her withal, lest betweene ex-
treme heate & labour the woman saynt
& swone. And furthermore, she must be
prouoked to sneesyng, and that eyther
with the powder of Eleborus, oz els of
pepper. Also the sydes of the woman
must be stroken downewarde with the
handes, which thyng helpeth greatly &
furthereth. And let the Wydwyfe al-
waye be verye diligent, prouydyng and
seing what shalbe necessary for the wo-
man, annoyntyng the priuities with
oyle, oz other such grese as I spake of
before, in this fashon.

Whereas to
helpe and
prouoke
the birth.

Take

The second booke.

A good mol-
lifying oint-
ment.

Take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or Duckes grese, & with that temper two graynes wayght of Saffron, and one grayne of Muske, and therewith annoynt the secrete partes. If this profite nothyng, then vse this suffumigation.

Take Myrrhe, Galbanum, Castorium, let those be beaten, and make lyke pyles of them, tempered together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pyles, and put it on hoate coales, and let the woman receiue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelow brymstone, myrrhe, Madder, Galbanum, Oppoponacū, of ech lyke much, and temper al those together, making of them pyles, and with those also ye may make fume, to be receyued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culuer dung, or of Haukes dung, by puttyng to of Oppoponacum, is soueraigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in deliuerance.

Also it is very good to dyp wooll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conuey into the secretes. Also the powder of Aristolochia retunda, or the roote called Bothor martis, Ciclaminus, or malum terre, or the seede of Staussagre, any of these wrapped in wooll, and conueyed inward, prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item, take Helchorus, Oppoponacum, & wrap them together in wooll, and minister them inward, for that wyll bying forth and prouoke the byrth, whether it be alque or dead. Also the
rinde

To Egg Barbers.
Take barbers, & prick the barbers for them, & put them in
a pott of oyle, & fill the pott full of barbers, then
take them out as soon as they are done.

The second booke. Fol. lxxviii.

rynde and barke, called Cassia lignea, beaten to powder, and tempered with wine, and drunken, prouoketh wel the byrth.

Item Asafetida, of the bygnesse and wayght of a pease, myngled together with Castorium of the waight of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wine myxt with water, and so drunken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell drunke with wine, is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of fenegreke, Cicircula, Maydenheare, al beaten togeather and sodden, and the oyle of blew flouredeluce, a small quantitie tempered therewithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatlye. And Cassia lignea and Asafetida drunke with wine, be very good for the same.

Also Polyoke sodden in cunduite water and drunken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is very good for her to washe her in the water in the which this Polyoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylles the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell, or Cinamome, and Saufine, of eche a dram, of Cassia lignea a dram and a halfe, of Myrrh, Aristolochia rotunda, & Costus amarus, of ech a dram, of Storax Liquida halfe a dram, and of Oppium the waight of. xii. graynes, beate these altogether, & fourme them into pylles, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylles,

with

made a
all this

Quinets from Sept all the wayes
 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 841. 842. 843. 844. 845. 846. 847. 848. 849. 850. 851. 852. 853. 854. 855. 856. 857. 858. 859. 860. 861. 862. 863. 864. 865. 866. 867. 868. 869. 870. 871. 872. 873. 874. 875. 876. 877. 878. 879. 880. 881. 882. 883. 884. 885. 886. 887. 888. 889. 890. 891. 892. 893. 894. 895. 896. 897. 898. 899. 900. 901. 902. 903. 904. 905. 906. 907. 908. 909. 910. 911. 912. 913. 914. 915. 916. 917. 918. 919. 920. 921. 922. 923. 924. 925. 926. 927. 928. 929. 930. 931. 932. 933. 934. 935. 936. 937. 938. 939. 940. 941. 942. 943. 944. 945. 946. 947. 948. 949. 950. 951. 952. 953. 954. 955. 956. 957. 958. 959. 960. 961. 962. 963. 964. 965. 966. 967. 968. 969. 970. 971. 972. 973. 974. 975. 976. 977. 978. 979. 980. 981. 982. 983. 984. 985. 986. 987. 988. 989. 990. 991. 992. 993. 994. 995. 996. 997. 998. 999. 1000.

The second booke.

with two ounces of good olde wine.

Item, Saffron and Syler montanum prouoketh
the birth of any luying thyng, yf it be drunken:
howbeit to a woman geue neuer passing a dram
at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie shoulde
greatly hurt.

Item, take, v. drammes of Saune, of Rue
or hearbe grace one dragma and a halfe, of Ju-
niper berries two drams, of Afafetida, Amoniacū,
Madder, of each two drammes, of these make
pylles, geuen to the woman in labour, with wa-
ter in the which is sodden Saune and Peniri-
al, or els with the broth of Cicercula, & the iuyce
of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drams of Sauiue, of Asafetida, Amoniacum and Gadder, of each half a dram, these temper together in pyles, and geue her with wine one dram of the same.

Item, take of Aristolochia longa, Pepper, and Myrrhe, of eche lyke muche, compact them together with wine, and make pylls of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylls be of suche efficacy and strength, that it alleuiateth and buyrneth the birth, it deliuereth the Matrix or Mother from al maner of birth, be it aloue or dead.

Item, take of whyte Bedellium, Myrthe, and
Savine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with
Cassia lignea, and Hony, & make pylls of them
to the bygnesse of Peason, and of these pylls
geue at each tyme fīue to the labouring woman,
whiche

Takes up of common & boyles it, & puffs it wth greasy & safty & puffs of eggs, & when
 it is boyled puffs it & let it boyle againe. & saye it wth pepper, & the best end
 inward, & hit wth a steele, & set in it, & then lay it in y^e peat wth salt butter.
 To be put in chynys. & saye for the same steele, & marle, & saye for some & puffs,
 & put them into y^e same coffin, & put the steele & marle, & saye for some & puffs,
 & when they be heale baked put in some sirup of vengious & some of sugar, & take them
 together, & set them in the oven againe.

The second booke. Fol. lxx.

whiche be of the same myght and strength, that
the other pylls spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrthe, Castorium, and Storax, of eche one dram, temper them with Honey, and make pilles of them: these for this purpose excel & passe al other, they be of such vertue and strength in operation.

A plaster to prouoke the byzth.

Take wilde Go'warde, and seethe it in water, in the same water temper Myrthe, the Iuyce of Rue, and Barly meale, so muche as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thynges together, and make it plaster wyse, then lay it to the womans belly, betweene the Paupll and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges
there be, which haue vertue and power
to prouoke birth, and to helpe it, yet lea-
uynge al such thynges for breuitie and
shortnesse, we haue set here only a
certayne, whose efficacie and
power shalbe sufficient to
this present pur-
pose.

Take ye pigge To bake a pigge
which is with in his belly, & wash him clean **Howe**
e pearch him season him with cloves, mace, nutmegs,
pepper & salt: & so laye him in the past in good
stone of butter. Then set it in the oven till it
be baked enough.

[illegible]

The second booke.

Chowe the secondine or seconde byrth
shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come
not freely of his owne kind.

Cap. v.

Ere also sometime it com-
meth to passe, that the se-
condine, which is wont to
come together with the
byrth, remayne and carry
behynde, and folowe not, and that for
diuers causes. One is, for because per-
adventure the woman hath ben so sore
weakened and feeblished with trauayle,
dolour, and payne, of that fyrste byrth,
that shee hath no strength remaynyng
to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the
seconde byrth. Another may be, that it
be entangled, tyed, or let within the ma-
trix (whiche chaunceth many tymes)
or that it be destitute of humors, so that
the water be flowen from it sooner
then tyme is, whiche shoulde make the
places more slippery and more easie to
passe thorowe: Or els that the places
ouer weeryed with long & sore labour,
for

for payne contract oꝛ geather togeather,
and enclose them selfe agayne, oꝛ that
the places be swolne for anguisher and
payne, and so let the comyng forth of
the seconde byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoeuer cause
it be thus stopped, the Wydwyfe in any
wyse muste fynde suche meanes, that it
may be vnloosed and expelled. For o-
ther wyse, great inconueniencie shoulde
chaunce to the partie, & specially suffo-
cation and chokynge of the Matrix, whi-
che also must so much the moze be taken
heed to, for because the seconde byrth re-
tayned and kept within, wyll soone put-
tifie and rot, whereof will issue all noy-
some & pestiferous vapours ascendyng
to the hart, the braynes, & the midriffe,
through the which meanes the woman
shalbe short winded, faynte hearted, of-
ten soundyng, and lying without anye
manner of mouyng oꝛ styrryng in the
pulces: yea, and many times is playne-
ly suffocated, strangled, and dead of it.
wherefore that none of these thynges

not in the
book of
the

Handwritten marginal note in cursive script, likely a commentary or correction.

The second booke.

happen, With all diligence and payne it muste be provided that the secondine be expelled.

Retention
of flowies
for weak-
nesse.

If retention of it come by weaknesse of the labourer, through long travayle, then must shee be recomforted & strengthened With good comfortable meates and drinckes, which may enhart her, as broth made of the yolke of Egges, or With good olde Wyne, and good fat and tidie fleshe, or Birdes, hennies fleshe, Capons, Partridge, Piggins, and such lyke.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contract together agayne, eyther els that the Matric is swollen for long paine: then must be vsed suche thynges to prouoke it out, the whiche doo make the way sylpper, soyle, & easie for it to proceede, With the oyles of ointmentes spoken of before, as oyle of Whyte Lillies, of Maiorum, and of blew Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or Galbanū, beaten to powder & dronke With luke warmed wine, Wyll cause the same to issue

issue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Penitrial sodden in Wyne, and the decoction dronken, is of the same vertue.

Item to suffume the secretes with the perfumes written of before, is good for this purpose, and the vapour of the water in which Mallowes, Holypoke, and Weresfoote be sodden, receyued beneath, is lyke good.

Also to walche that partes in water in which is sodden bzanne, or to holde a litle bagge full of sodden bzanne to the place, and there withall to soke the place, is very profitable.

But yf the retention of the secondine come by reason that it is entangled or fastened in some place of the matric, so that it wyll not resolue ne loose: then make a fume vnderneath of brimstone, Iue leanes, and Cresses, or els of Cresses and Fygges.

Also of all odoriferous and sweete smelling thinges, as Ambre, Muske, Frankincense, Gallia Muscara, and confection

The second booke.

tion neare, the which sauoures and perfumes put on the embers, muste be so closely receiued vnderneath, that no part of the smel do ascende to the nose of the woman. For to the nose shoulde the sa-
uour of nothyng come, but only of suche things the which stinke, or haue abho-
minable smel, as Asafetita, Castoriū, mans heare or womans heare burnt, De-
cockes fethers burnt. Item, in this case it shalbe very goodd to make a perfume vnderneath of the houe of an asse, which thinges although they be of yll sauour, yet they be of such nature and efficacie, that they occasionate not onlye the se-
condine, but also dead byrthes to pro-
ceede and come forth out of the Matrice. And in this case also let the woman holde her breath inwarde, so muche as she can, for that shal dryue downward such thynges as be in the body to be ex-
pelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneese with the poulder of Eleborus or Pepper put in the nose, holding her mouth and
nose

nose so close as may be.


Also the oyntment which is called Vnguentum Basilicon conueyed into þe matrix, is very good, for it mollifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the which so sone as it is expelled, infuse the oyle of Roses into the same matrix. Item Rose water tempered with a quantitie of the pouder of Holyoke, and dronke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any part of the secondine do appeare, let the Mydwysse receyue it tenderlye, loosing it out sayre and softly lest it breake, and if ye doubt that it will breake, then let the Mydwysse tye that parte of the which she hath handfast, to the womans legge or foote, not very strayght lest it breake, neyther very laxe lest it slip in agayne, and then cause her to sneele. Now yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quicklye forwarde, then loose it a lytle and a lytle very tenderly, wreathing it from one side to another, tyl suche tyme

The second booke.

as it be gotten out, but euer beware of
violent and hasty monyng of it, lest that
With the seconde byrth ye remoue the
Matrix also.

And yf in this meane Whyle the Wo-
man faynt oz sowne by reason of great
payne ensuyng of the takyng away of
this secundine, then must ye minister
such thinges to her the Whiche comfort
the head & the hart, as be electuaries
Whiche are confect With Muske, Ambre,
and the confection of pretious stones,
as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also
suche thynges the Whiche comforte the
stomacke, as Diagalanga, Dia cinamomum, &
suche lyke, Whiche are alway in a redy-
nesse at the Apothecaries, the Whiche
also she shal receiue With Wine.

Item, to remoue the secundine, & to ex-
pel it, take Rue, Horehounde, Sothern-
wood, and Gotherwurte, of eche lyke
quantitie, and then take so muche of the
oyle of Lillies, as may be sufficient to
steepe, moysten, and soke the sozelayde
herbes

hearbes in; put all this togeather into a glased potte, couered with suche a couer, that it haue a litle hole oz vente aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this potte ouer a fyre of coales, so that it boyle a litle whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole where the woman sitteth, made for the nonce, hauyng a pype made for the purpose, of the whiche the one ende ye shall put into the vente oz hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receiue into her body, and so to sitte closed rounde about with clothes, that no vapour oz ayre go forth of the potte, hauyng a fewe coles vnder it, to keepe it hotte: and thus sytte the space of an houre oz two, tyll suche tyme as the secondine moue oz begin to procede of his owne kynde.

And yf it be so that ye profite not this wayes, yet then laye this plaster on the bellye betweene the nauyll and the secretes, of the whiche we shall speake

The second booke.

hereafter, the which is of suchē operati-
on and effecacie, that it expelleth dead
byrthes. If for all this the secondine
come not forwarde, then leaue it, & vse
no more medicines ne remedies to that
purpose, but let it alone, for within few
dayes it will putrisie and corrupt, and
dissolue into a watery substance, thicke
lyke hyne or other sex mixed with wa-
ter, and so issue forth. Howbeit, in the
meane whyle it wyl put the woman to
great paine in the head, in the hart, and
in the stomacke, as we touched before.

¶ Howē that many thynges chaunce to the
women after theyr labour, and howē
to auoyde, defende, or to remedie
the same. Cap. vi.

It is also to be vnderstanded,
that many times after the de-
liuerance, happeneth to wo-
men other the feuer or ague, or
swelling, or inflation of the body, other
tumblyng in the bellye, or els commoti-
on or settelyng out of order of the Mo-
ther

ther or Matrix. Cause of the Whiche thinges is sometymes lacke of due and sufficient purgation and clenſyng of the flowres after the byrth, or els contrary: Wyſe ouermuche flowyng of the ſame, Whiche ſoze doth weaken the Woman: alſo the great labour and ſtyrryng of the Matrix in the byrth.

Then as oft as it cometh for lacke of due purgation of the flowres, there muſte be miniſtred ſuche thynges the which may prouoke the ſame, whether it be by medicines taken at the mouth, or by lotion and waſhing of the feete, or by ſoures, or odour, or emplaſtration, or by decoction of hearbes ſeruing to that purpoſe, or els by oyntmentes, and ſuch other thinges, accordyng as the perſon or the perill both require, of the whiche things ſeuerall women be ignozant. And ye muſt take diligent heed that ſhe be exactly & utterly purged. To this be agreeable al ſuche ſymples the whiche prouoke brine, and open the waynes, making free way for the blood to paſſe
and

The second booke.

and sende the humours and matter
downward, as Motherwort, Asarum,
Savine, Penitriall, Parseley, Charuyl,
Annis seede, Fenel seede, Juniper ber-
ries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder,
Valerian, Tyme, Cinamome, Spike-
narde, and suche other. Al those things
as they do prouoke and cause brine, so
do they also prouoke & cause the flow-
ers to depart. howbeit, as neare as ye
can, vse none of these things without
the counsaile of an experte Physitian,
lest whylest ye helpe one place, ye hurte
another: also to sleepe, helpeth muche
to this matter, & to holde in the breath,
enclosing the nose and the mouth. Al-
so fumigation made of the eyes of salte
fyshe, or of the houe of a horse vnder-
neath, prouoketh the floures. If ye pro-
fite not by this meanes, then being able
to beare it, let her blood in the vaine cal-
led Saphina, vnder the angles of the feete,
for this prouoketh flowres cheefely of
al other thynges. Likewise do, yf the woman haue the
ague

The second booke. Fol. lxxv.

ague after her labour, for that cometh
of like cause by retention of the flowres,
and in the feuer let her vse to drinke wa-
ter, in the which is decocte Barley bea-
ten, or Cicer and Barley together, or
water in which is sodden Tamarindi, or
whay of mylke, and let her eate a cullis
made of a Cocke, and sweete Pomegra-
nates, for these thinges do prouoke the
flowres, and mittigateth the immode-
rate heate, refreshyng greatly the body,
loosyng and opening suche thinges the
which befoze were constrict and clab-
dered together.

If the body after labour do swell and
inflate, then let her drinke water, in the
which is sodden Cicer & Cummin, bea-
ten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuarie cal-
led Diaciminum, or of the Trochiskes of Alke-
chengie, other wise called Halicacabus.

Also in this case a clyster made of suche thyn-
ges the which doo banquy the and expell ventosi-
ties and wyndynesse, as Annis seede, fenell
seede, Rue the hearbe and the seede, Bay berries,

Com.

For the a-
gue in wo-
men with
chylde.

The second booke.

Comm. ac. Also a pessarie or suppositarie made for that part of Aristolochia rotunda, Squinantum, Storax Liquida, Dorenicum, Zeduarie.

Agayne, yf the woman after her labour haue frettyng and gnawynge of the guttes, and payne of the Matrix, and other secrete partes there about, then lether bse the vapour and fume of suche thinges the whiche haue vertue to mittigate, swage, and alay the payne, as Wallowes, Holioke, Fenegreke, Commyn, Camomell, and Sauine. Of these also make emplasters and bagges, the whiche may be applyed to the payned places.

Also to annoynt þ places with Oleum sesaminū (yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete Almondes. And yf no great heate do abounde in the woman, she may drynke Triacle, or Trifera magna, with wine in whiche is decoct Motherwort or Bugge wort.

Also agaynst payne in the pituite partes, take Penitall, Policaria, fixe leaues of baye tree, seeth them togeather, and receyue the vapour vnderneath closely.

Item, take Rue, red Mother wort, Sothernwood, beat them together, and temper them with the oyle of Penitall, and put all together into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a while tyll it be somewhat sodden together, & then take it of agayne, & put it into a litle rounde linnen bagge made so, the purpose, the whiche with these hearbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take Camomel and Lyne, of eche lyke much,

muchc.iiii.handfulles,bzay them togeather,and
seethe them with white wine,and then put it in
a rounde bag of linnen,as before was done,and
conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item,let her drynke for the same purpose,two
graynes of Muske with wine.

Item,take white Onions, and couer them
vnder the hot ashes, the whiche when they be
well roasted, beate them togeather with freshe
Butter vn salted, and make it in manner of a pla
ster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and con
uay it into the places as before: in the meane
whyle perswemyng the priuie partes with whyte
Frankencense and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be bexed about the
backe and loynes after her labour, take Camo
mell and Buggerwort, of eche two handfulles,
of rooyme wood, Sothier wood, of eche one
handfull, or Rother woort three handfulles, of
Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe
an ounce, decocte al these thinges togeather, and
in the water of this decoction beyng warme,
dyp a sponge or other linnen clothes, somenting,
sohyng, and strekyng the backe with the same,
and so do oftentymes, or els put al these foresayde
herbes togeather sodden in a bagge, and lay it
plaster wyle to the backe.

If this profite not, take oyle Mardine, oyle of
whyte Lylies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to
the whiche put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to
small power, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anece, oyle of Camomell,
of

blood, for in that case they sende forth
the more agayne. And yf the Matrix be
bnnmyghtie and Weakened, the baynes
lyke wyse are Weake and large, so that
they can not retayne nor Withholde the
blood.

Also if the body of the woman, or the outwarde partes be very dence, close, & compact together, so that the outward poores be contract and shutte, in suche wise that no vapours or sweete can issue out at them, then this shall cause the yll humours (whiche otherwyse woulde passe through the pores in sweete) to remaine within the bodye, and there to engender and encrease great fluxe and abundaunce of matter, whiche proceedeth with the flowres, and augmenteth the quantitie of them.

Also yf the waynes of the Matrix be
(by some chaunce) open and flow forth,
as yf the Matrix be perished or other-
wyse viciate : or yf it chaunce that
the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath
ben thruste, or beaten, by all and any

The second booke.

of this meanes may come this inordinate fluxe of flowres.

Good coun-
sell to the
woman.

Nowe seeing then that it ensueth by so manyfolde occasions and causes, it shalbe meete that Women in this case be nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose their minde unto expert Physitions, shewing them every thing in it, as they knowe wherebpon it shoulde come, so that the Physition vnderstandyng the womans mynd, may the sooner by his learning and experience consyder the true cause of it, and the very remedye to amende it. And many thynges there be which cease and restraîne this overmuch flowyng of flowres, both Electuaries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pouders, Clysters, Onions, Suffumigations, Bathes, Plasters, and Oynementes, of whiche for the loue of Women I wyl here set forth the most principal and best.

First then to stinte and restrayne the outrageous fluxe of flowres, it shalbe verye good to binde the armes straght and strongly, and not the feete or handes, as some vnwyse men doo teach

teache, and then to sette a ventose bore; or cup-
pyng glasse with fyre (whiche is called boxyng)
bnder the breastes, without any scarification
laying also linnen clothes dypped in vineger
on the belly betweene the Nauell and the secre-
tes, conueying also into the places such thynges
whiche haue vertue to restrayne blood, as the
flowre and rynde of Pomegranate, Ambre, Terra
Sigillata, Bole Armeniacke, Sanguis Draconis,
Hematites, the red Rose, whyte Frankencense, &
galles, all those things, or as many of them as ye
can conueniently get, beate them to powder in
lyke portyon, and temper them with redde wine,
makyng of it a plaster, the whiche so tempered,
put into a lytle rounde bagge, the quantitie of a
mang thumb, the whiche she shall put into the
pruise partes.

¶ Item, another plaster, to be ministred lyke wyse.

Take of the blood stone, called Hematites, Bole Armentac, of ech halfe an ounce, **Sanguis Draconis, Licium,** of ech two drams, **Karabe,** otherwyle named **Ambze,** the cuppes of **Acornes,** **Cypres** tree **Nuttes,** flowres of **Pomegranate,** of eche one dram, of the scales of **Iron** one dram and a halfe, **Turpentine** and **Pitche** lyke quantitie, or so muche as shalbe sufficient to make a softte and somewhat liquid plasser, beate & braye all these together, temperyng it to a plasser, and then doo with it, as ye dyd with the other before.

¶ An oylment for the same purpose.

Take oyle Martine, oyle of Roses, ofeche
four ounces, Karabe, the scrapping of Iuery, the
scrapping

Di

scrapping

[illegible]

The second booke.

scraping of a goates horne, redde Cozall, Terra sigillata, white Frankencense, of eche (beyng well and synclly beaten) two drams, of whyte ware two ounces: all those tempered togeather, make them in an oyntment, and therewith annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

¶ A bath concernyng the same.

Take Wormewood, Plantane the moze and the lesse, the toppes of vines, freshe bzaunches of wyld Mulberies, oz of the bramble, bnyrpe Damassons, Sloes, oz Bolasse, wyld Beares, Medlers oz Mispilles, of eche two handfulls, and red rose leaues two handfulls, of Dalies, of all sortes of Thystles, of eche two handfulls, of Cinckfoyle the leaues and rootes, Cozmentyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne Cuppes, a sawcer full, of Gaules, of Acornes pylled, of Bursa pastoris, of eche two handfulls, beate all these to powder, cuttyng and brusyng that that wil not be beaten to powder, and see the them togeather in rayne water, oz els in water in the which ten oz twelue burnt flynt stoness haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selfe in this water by to the Navel, and when she commeth forth of the bath, geue her to drynke two drammes of Electuarium Athanasie, oz Miclete, with Plantane water, oz yf she be sore thirskie, with red wyne.

And lyke wyse ye maye geue to her of these electuaries that folowe. Take good olde rose Sugar two ounces, of red Cozall, burnt Iuery, Bole Armeniacke, of eche two drams, of Hema-
tites

The second booke. Fol. lxxix.

tites three drammes, beate all these thinges together, temperyng it with the rose Suger, and let her receiue of it in the mornyng and euening, at eche tyme one dramme, with fyre spoonesfuls of Plantane water, or els the water of Bursa pastoris.

Item, take of the stone Hematites, and rub it on a Barbers whetstone, called a Bone, tyll the Bone seeme red, then washe it agayne from the Bone with Plantane water, and so doo oftentimes, vntyll you haue a good quantitie of it, and every morning let the woman drinke. iiii. iiii. or. b. spoonesfulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Crochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Crochiskes of Carabe, or Ambre, and the Crochiskes of Bole armeniacke, whiche must be ministred a dramme or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. or. b. spoonesfuls of Plantane water.

Who that requireth further in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Nowe yf it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the priue places after her labour, then must the Apostumes & diseases be censed, poured, and healed, the payne and ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berries or leaues of Night-

The second booke.

Shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that al those thinges be tempered together, and the places annoynted therewith.

Item otherwise. Take the white of an egge, womans mylke, the iuyce of Purslane, and temper al these together, and conuey it to the diseased place.

These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes. As for the rest, howe to open, drie, and cleanse suche Apostumations, ye must consult with some Physicion or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte commeth forth both in man and woman, and speciallye in women in this businesse, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng with them selfe: wherefore in this case it is the Wydwyses parte, with her hande warmed, and wet in white wyne, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the which if she can not by this meanes, for because peraduenture it be swollē, then
let

let her dissolue butter in Whyte Wyne warmed, and therein dip Woll, With the Which Wraspe the same gutte a Whyte, so doyng often tymes tyll it be swaged, that it may be returned in agayne. And ye may vse in the steade of Whyte Wine, luke warme milke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into his place: Take ware, and melt it together with Masticke or whyte frankencense: then spreade it vpon linnen, plasterwysse, and laye it ouer the place where it came forth, byndyng it to with a linnen cloth or roller, for partying of. And let this be done thus, so often as he goeth to stoole, after that he hath done, vntyll such tyme that it be so settled withyn, that it come no more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupie ware, then dyppe woll in the oyle of Masticke, or of Spike Harde, and laye it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it faste vnto the place, as befoze.

Item, another way, washe and soke the gutte with the water, in which is decocte and sodden such thynges which exicate, drye, and constryne or combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuttes, flowres of Pomegranate, Ambre, Masticke, frankencense, Sanguis Draconis: and when it is wel washed and soaked with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it agayne.

The second booke.

into his place.

Agayne, sometyme it cometh to passe, that after the womans labour the Matrix is remoued out of his place, and appeareth forth: Then let it be washed and loked with the water in whiche be sodden these thynges folowynge.

Take of Cipres nuts, Spyke narde, Balauſtium, Acome cuppes, of eche one ounce, of Mespylles, and vnrype wylde Peares, and vnrype Apples, Plummes, and Damsons, or Bollasse, of eche a handfull. And suche of those as be to be powdered, beate them to powder, and the rest diuide and cut them small, then seeth them all together in rayne water, or els in water in the whiche Steele beyng redde hotte hath been oftentymes quenched, and in the same water let the partie bath her vp to the Hauell: or els dyppe a sponge or a Locke of woll in it, and therewith washe and soke the same Matrix oftentymes. Then euer with a sayre cleane linnen cloth wype it cleane agayne, and strewe vpon it the powder folowynge, beaten very small, and searled through sylke.

Take of Frankencense, Karabe, Galles, Balauſtium, Cipres nuttes, Aliome, Antimoni, Bole Armeniacke, Masticke, of eche lyke muche, beate all these to very fyne powder, and strewe the Matrix with it, then tenderly reduce it into his place agayne with warme linnen clothes, byndynge it vp.

bp. But yf so be that the Matrice be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyl not be restored to his naturall place agayne, then dissolue butter in white wine, as ye dyd befoze, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometyme it chaunceth that the womans Nauyl through labour is dissolued, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tent of fine linnen, and annoynt it with this oyntment that followeth, & the same put into the Nauyl.

Remedies
for the wo-
mans nauil,
when it ope-
neth it selfe
for payne in
the labour.

Take whyte Frankencense, and beate it to powder, and then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the manner of liquid honye, with this annoynt the Nauyl within and without, annoyntyng also the tente, the which beyng put in the hole of the Nauyl, binde some cloth ouer to kepe it in his place.

Item, many tymes it chaunceth that through the great difficultie & rhonges of labour, the priuie parte and the fundement become one, by reason of rupture and breakyng of the same parte in the delyuerance of the chyld, and that by that meanes the Matrice descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thyng chaunceth some tymes, by reason that

Howe that
sometyme
the priuie
part & fun-
dement be-
come one.

The seconde booke.

the same place is very narrow, and also tender, and the birth bigge and of great growth, so that it proceedeth with such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

when this mishappe falleth, fyrste washe and soke the Matrix, and allorédue it to his place againe, after the manner as I tolde you here immediatly before: then heale this bracke and wound by sowyng of both sydes of it togeather agayne with a sylken threede, as Chirurgians do other woundes, and if that lyke ye not, then may ye cure it otherwyse without sowyng, thus.

Take two litle peeces of linnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fyngers broade, spreade the litle clothes with some fast cleauyng plaster, the whiche wyl cause the cloutes to stycke fast where they shalbe sette: then fasten them, the one on the one syde of the ryft, the other on the other syde, so that nothyng appeare betweene the peeces of linnen in the myddes of them, but onlye the clyfte and ryfte of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sydes of the linnen togeather close, as before I byd you to sow the skynne, and when they be thus styched togeather, lay a litle

The second booke. Fol. lxxxii.

lytle liquid pytche oz tarre bpon the seame. And this done, the lappes and sydes of the wounde vnder the linnen plaster wyll growe togeather agayne, and heale, and then may ye remove your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dzyed, and beate it to powder, also a litle quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, soyne them togeather, and strow of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it it shal heale.

¶ Of aborcementes, oz vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen and ealed. Cap. vii.



ABorcement, oz vntymelye birth, is when the woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be rype, (as in the.iii.iiii. oz v. moneth) before the byrth haue lyfe: and sometymes after it hath lyfe, it is deliuered before it stirre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the whiche thinges there be manye and diuers causes.

Many causes of vntymely byrthes.

Fyrst, sometymes the mouth of the Matrix

The seconde booke.

Matrix is so large and ample, that it can not conveniently close it selfe together, neither containe the feature or conception: Or els it may be so corrupted & infected With viscons, slymie, fleumatycke, and other Waterythe humours, that the cauitie or holownesse therof is thereby made so slypperie, that the feature conceiued can not there remayne, but slyppeth and slydeth forth againe. Also sometimes the Matrix is apostumated and soze, so that for payne it can not conteyne the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotlidons, that is the vaines by the which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matrix (throughe the whiche also the feature receiueth nourishment and foode, as is declared in the first booke) be stopped With viscons & yll humours, or els swollen by inflasion, so that they breake, by the whiche meanes, the feature destitute of his wont nourishment, perisheth and dyeth, & that most commonly in the second and thirde moneth after

after conception. wherfoze hypocrates sayth : All suche women which be impregnate or conceived, being of a meane state in theyr body (that is to say, nether to fatte or grosse, ne to spare or leane) yf it chaunce any suche to abozte in the seconde or thyrde moneth (no other evident cause appear yng) knowe ye for certayne, that it issueth for because the Cotildons be opplete, stopped and stuffed with yll humours, and be swollen and puffed therewith that they breake: and so consequentye the feature dyeth for fault of foode.

Item, abozcement sometyne cometh by reason that some of the places about the Matrix be diseased and greued, as yf Intestinum rectum, whiche is called the fundement gut, be vlcerate, hauyng the pyles of Hemorrhoides: or the vesick or bladder be swollen or encubred with the stone, the strangury, or other euil. In these cases throughe the great labour & paine the which the partie hath in endeuoring & enforcing her selfe other

Abozcement
by reason of
some greefe
about the
Matrix.

The second booke.

to stoole, or to make water, be engendred great motions downeward, whereby many tymes the handfastnes of the Cotilidons is broken.

Abor-
ment by
Tenasmus.

Also aborcement may come of a disease called Tenasmus, the which is when one hath euer great desyre and luste to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, neuerthelesse the parties greatlye doo enforce and paine them selues to it. And as Hypocrates sayth, the pregaunt woman which hath Tenasmus, for the most parte abhorceth, that is to say, bringeth forth her chylde out of tyme.

Abor-
ment
through the
cough.

Item, the cough, if it be greuous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent Philition sayth, suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, euermore lyghtly do abort, for because that all the meate and foode the whiche they receyue, turneth to foode, nourishment, and restauration of theyr owne bodyes, and so is the conception destitute of foode, wherefore necessarye it dyeth.

Item,

Item, this chaunce also commeth by ouermuch bleeding at the nose, or other where, or issuyng of the flowres immoderately. And so sayth Hypocrates, yf the woman yeeld flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature do long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstande, if they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and verye spare, or yf it be after the thyrde moneth, for it may be well, that in the fyrste and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet litle foode and nourishment satisfieth the conception for the smalenesse thereof.

Item, to be let blood may be the cause of abozement, whiche must be vnderstande in suche as haue but litle store of blood: but such as haue great copy and plentie of blood, may without anye peryll (yf any vrgent cause require it) be let blood, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seuenth. Howbeit, I would that none should be let blood, except some great and wayghtie cause
dyd

The second booke.

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by takyng of some strong purgation befoze the fourth moneth, and after the seventh moneth.

And yf it be so that any necessitie do so require that she must needes receyue a purgation, let it be done betweene the fourth and the seventh moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easie.

And this may come by reason of a continual flure, be it blooddy or otherwyle, and speciall ye yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and peryshed. And ouermuche vomityng may be cause of abozement, for by ouermuch galpyng and reachyng vpwordes, the Cotilidons may be broken, and so the feature to peryshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger, and also sharpe and feruent sycknesse may be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and todayne pallsie,

palsye, the falling sycknesse. &c. Also ouermuch drunkennes, and excesse feeding and surfetting, by the whiche the byrth is suffocate and strangled in the belly, and the foode corrupt for lacke of due digestion.

Item, if the birth be sicke by any outward or inward cause, or yf the Secondine in the which the feature is conteyned, do breake before his time, and the humours and waters of the same flow & issue forth, causing the place to be slippery, and so the byrth to slide away vntimely: or yf the mother haue taken very great cold, or ouer great heat, whiche weakeneth both mother and child.

And therefore ought women with chylde to excheue much bathing or going to the hot houses in theyr teemyng, for that may doo hurt three wayes.

Fyrst, that it kyndleth or enflameth the ayre or breath conteyned in the body, and so styfleth the chylde, and sometime the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, & looseth

The second booke.

looseth the Cotilidons, and so maketh the byrth to issue forth. Thirdly, that the vtter heate of the bath, encrease the inwarde heate of the body: in so muche, that the byrth not beyng able to sustayne and abyde the heate, naturally proceedeth for refrigeration and cooling: but in the tyme, or about the tyme of labour, she may vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite deliuerance.

Cause of a-
bozement
by mutati-
on of the
weather.

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and weather, may be cause of abozement. For (as Hypocrates wyrteth) Whensoever the Winter is hot and moyste, and the spring tyde after colde & drye, suche women in that spring tyde may soone & of a lyght cause haue abozement: Or yf they aboze not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great paine, and the byrth shalbe very weake & sickly, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by and by, it shal proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this,

For

For when that suche wynteryng chaunceth, the hote and moyst weather heateth and moysteth the womans body, and by that the body is opened, vnloosed, & resolued, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed, and bypon this when the spryng time commeth, yf it be colde and drye, findyng the body open and vnloosed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the sooner and the more vehemently: & the byrth feelyng the sodayne colde and chaunge of weather, pineth away, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered: or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to keepe lyfe in it.

Item, abozcement may happen by ouer muche styring of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leapyng, or by some fall or thrust agaynst some wall, or beating, or by some sodaine anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodaine and vnlooked for ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche moste com-

Di

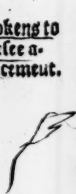
monly

The second booke.

monly maye ensue abozement oz vntymely byrth, the whiche no doubte is much more greefe and payne to the woman, then the very natural labour, for such thynges as chaunce to man oz woman contrarye to nature, oz before nature doeth require it, is farre greater greefe, then the same happenyng and conning in his due season.

¶ Signes wherby ye may foresee abozement.

Tokens to
foresee a-
bozement.



¶ When the woman shall labour before her tyme, these signes are wont to goe before. Fyrst her brests which before were hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to waxe lesse, to fall, and to flagge, and then euer for the most part abozement foloweth. But if it be so that she go with two children at once, if one of the brestes swage, whiche before was in good lyking, the other remaynyng sounde and safe, then looke of what side the brest is of, and the chyld of that syde is in peryll. Wherefore hypocrates wyrteth, yf the ryght brest flake oz flagge, the masculyne oz male

male byrth is in peryl: yf the left, the female byrth, because that for the moſte part when there be two at once, the one is masculine, and the other feminine: the man lyeth in the ryght ſyde, and the woman in the left moſt commonly.

Alſo another ſigne of aborcement is, when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, and that ſhe begyn to waxe redde in the face, and all partes of the body to ſhake & tremble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palſie in the head. Item when ſhe feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braines, the reſt of the body taken as it were with a weerines, without any outward apparant cauſe why: theſe thynges portende and ſignifie aborcement to be at hande, ſpecially yf at the ſame tyme the flowres iſſue alſo.

Item, yf the womans body do ſwell and inflate with a certayne hardneſſe or ſtiſſneſſe, and that ſhe feele ſtytches, and as it were ventoliſtie or wynde, runnyng from one ſyde of the bodye

The second booke.

to the other, and yet the belly notwithstanding, beyng nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the same inflation do persist and continue anye whyle, the woman takyng and eatyng suche thynges whiche haue vertue to discusse and banquishe ventositie and wyndynesse: this thyng I say dooth betoken peryll of abozement through ventositie and inflation, and that cheefely about the thirde or fourth moneth after the conception.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared euident and sufficient signes, whereby may be prouided and foreseene the abozement befoze it come. Nowe wyl I shew you the remedies wherby it may be auerted and let.

Remedies
wherby to
auoyde a-
bozement.

The cheefe remedie to auoyd abozement is, to shun al such thinges whiche may be cause of it, the whiche I haue competently entreated of alredye: but yf ye feare abozement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and large,

The second booke. Fol.lxxxviij.

large, then muste ye vse suche thynges whose operation is to contract, constrain, and bring together, as Bathes, Fumigations, Oyntmentes, Plasters, Odours, and suche lyke, of the whiche I haue spoken befoze, and such thinges the which repressse and stynte the flow-ers flowyng ouer muche after the byrth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, because the mouth of the Matrix is moyst and slipperie, other because that the cotilidons be replete and fulfilled with viscos humours, and with inflations or ventosities: then may ye defend it by vsyng of suche thinges whose qualities be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and to repressse ventosities, whereof also we haue made mention here befoze.

Howbeit in all this matter, let not to make some expert Phisition of your counsayle, yf ye may haue suche one, for because that many suche thynges come, and not al by one way or meane.

And yf ye doubt peryll for because

¶

that

• The second booke.

that the Matrice or other places about
be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate,
or hauing the stone or strangury, and
suche other thynges: then aske and vse
the aduise of some well learned medi-
cine, and he shall shewe you howe all
thynges shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare abozement be-
cause the partie is very weake and low
brought, then let her feede on such thin-
ges the whiche moysten and nouryshe
well, or fatten the body, as Capons
fleshe, Kyd, Lamme, young Ueale,
Partridge, and such other.

Agayne, yf the woman be taken with
any sharpe and fell disease, then let her
be cured of the same as shortly as can
be, with such thynges the which apper-
tayne to the curyng of such disease: or yf
she haue susteyned any long famine or
hunger, then let her be fedde with good
meates and drinckes moderately taken:
and yf she haue surfettted by ouermuch
eatynge and drynkyng (as now a
dayes most commonly people do) then
let

let her absteyne for a time, and if it may be conueniently done, let her receyue some easie and gentle medicine, whiche maye alleuiate and lyghten her of her surfettyng burden, especially by vomityng, for the whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pinte of Water luke warme, wherein hath ben sodden two sponesfuls of clarified hony, and then afterwarde if it come not of it selfe, with her finger, or with a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in blood, then shall it be verye good a litle to let her blood, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, whiche thowwe ouermuch abundance of it, might happen to be suffocated & strangled: of the whiche thing also I haue spoken largely before.

Furthermoze, yf the woman feare aborcement, by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite & parbreackyng, or the fluxe, or of the disease called Tenaismus, or of ouermuche issuyng

The second booke.

of blood, whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduice of a Physitian for remedie, yf for the fragilitie, tenderesse, and blacke of the secondine, she feare this abozement, for because that in this case the secondine shal not be able to holde and contayne the byrth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that she hurt not her selfe by ouermuche mouing or styring, as by labouryng, daunsyng, runnyng, standyng, faste goyng, or carryng of ponderous and wayghtie thynges, or lystyng of the same. And to be short, let her with al warynesse take heede and be diligent that she eschewe and abstayne from al suche thynges the whiche myght cause and induce abozement.

Of dead birthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, and by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix.

It

Ishalbe now conueniēt for vs to speake of dead birthes, how it shalbe knowen that they be dead, and howe they may be expelled from the mother.

Signes to know whether the child be dead in the mothers wombe.

Signes then that the byrth is dead in the mothers wombe, be these.

- i. Fyrste, yf the mothers brestes do suddenly flake, as I touched before.
- ii. If it mooue it selfe no more, beyng woont before to styre.
- iii. If when the mother turneth her from the one side to the other, she feele it falling from the one syde to the other like a stone, or a dead wayght.
- iiii. If her belly and nauyll begyn to ware colde, whiche before was wont to be temperately hotte.
- v. If any stynkyng and fylthie humours flowe from the Matrix, and cheefely after some fel disease.
- vi. If the womans eyes ware holow, and that her colour change from white to swarte and dunne colour, and that her eyes and nose ware astonyed, and haue

The second booke.

haue not their right vse, and her lyppes
Ware Wanne.

vii. If beneath the Pauell and about
the secrete partes she feele great throng
& payne, the colour of her face chaunge-
yng into woozse and woozse, other wise
then it was wont to doo.

viii. If she haue appetite to eate suche
thinges whiche be agaynst nature, and
not wont to be eaten or drunken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed with
vaine and terrible dreames.

x. If she be pained continually with the
strangurie, or that she enforce her selfe
much to the stoole, and with al her po-
wer, and yet can not do any thing.

xi. If her breath begyn to synke, the
which thyng lightly happeneth two or
thre dayes after the byrth be dead.

xii. If her hands put into very warme
water, and then layde on the womans
belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe
that it is dead.

Of all these signes now, the more
that come togeather of them at one
tyme

tyme and in one person, the surer may
ye be that the byrth is dead, the Whiche
beyng once dead, all diligence must be
had that it may be expelled out of the
Womans body.

But here must ye see agayne whether
it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe sa-
ued, or no : for sometime it chaunceth
that the Mother dyeth withall, and
som tymes the Mother doth well and
prospereth.

Whether the mother shalbe in peryll
withall, or no, by these thynges shall
ye knowe. If the woman being in the
labour sowne, or feare, as though she
were in a traunce : if her remembrance
fayle her, and she waxe feeble and scant
able to moue or styre her selfe : yf she
(called with a loude voyce) can aun-
swere nothyng at all, or els verye ly-
tle, and that very softly, as though her
voyce began to fayle her : if she be inua-
ded or taken among in the labouryng
with conuulsion or shrynkelyng togea-
ther: if she refuse or cannot brooke meate:
yf

To knowe
whether the
mother shall
be in perill
or no.

The second booke.

ys her pulses beate very fast, the whiche signes when ye see in y^e woman labouryng, it is an euident token that she shal not lyue long after her deliuerance, wherefore commit the cure of her to the handes of almightie God : but ys none of these signes doo appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shal do wel, the byrth beyng once departed : wherefore geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be delyuered of this dead burthen, the whiche thyng maye be done by two wayes, eyther by medicines expulsive, or els by certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two me-
nes to expel
dead bir-
thes.

ffyrste without instrumentes, with this fumigation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Asse, and put it on coles, & let the woman receyue the fume vnderneath.

Another.

Take the skynne of an Adder, Myrr, Castoriū, Brymstone, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, Madder that the Diers occupie, Pigeōs donge, or Hawkes donge, beate al these to powder, & temper the with Oxe gall, & make pylls of it, eche the quantitie of a sylberde nutte, and then put one after another

another in the coales, and receiue the fume thorowe a pype or conduite made for that purpose into the priuities.

Another. Take Encense, Oppoponacum, Galbanum, Brimstone, of eche like muche, beate them togeather, and temper them with Ore gall, and make pilles of them, and then of the same make fumigations as before.

A potion for the same purpose. Take Asafetida, halfe a dram, of Rue three drams, of Myrre two drams, and beate them to powder, and geue to the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder with white wine, or with water in the whiche Sauiue is sodden.

Another. Take figges, fenegreke, Organie, and seethe them in water, the whiche geue vnto the woman to drynke: for this drynke wyll engender lubricitie and slyppernesse in the neather partes, and vse also some of those thynges which haue vertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we entreated before.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries concerning the same. Take Gumme, Ammoniacke, Oppoponacum, Heleborus niger, Staphisager, Aristolochia longa, and Colocinthis without his kernels, beate al these thinges togeather, tempering them with Ore gal, and also with the iuyce of fresh Rue, then make a pessarie of wollen, and annoynt and wet the pessarie with the same, conueying it into the secrete places.

Item another. Make a pessarie of wollen, of the length and thychnesse of a fynger, and dyppe
it

The second booke.

it in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolved a quantitie of Scammonie, and doo with that pessarie as before.

Item, take Aristolochia rotunda, Savine, garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Oxe gall, with this annoynt a pessarie made and ordered as before is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drynke the mylke of another woman, it wyl styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Blttayne, oz of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe, two drams, and geue the same to drynke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shal ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shal expel the dead byrth without anye peryll of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrthe foure drammes, of Cinnamon, Galbanum, Castorium, of eache two drams, of Oppoponacum, one dramme, all those beaten & tempered together with Oxe gal, make pilles of them, waying eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the neather partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of blood is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Sothernwood, Mugwurt, of eche a handfull, of Asphaltum halfe an ounce, ofadder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomel, Horehounde, fenegreke, of eche two ounces, see the al these thinges together in
rayne

The second booke. Fol.xciij.

rayne water, in the which let the woman bath her selfe: then take of Hennes grese and Duckes grese, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche add two ounces of oyle of Wyll seede, with this oymment annoynt the womans head commyng out of the bath, then take Date stones, and beate them to powder, a dramme and an halfe, with a scruple of Saffron tempered togeather with whyte wyne, the whiche let her immediately drynke after she come forth of the bath.

Item, take Oppoponacum, and make thereof a pessarye, the quantitie of a synger, conuaye it into the priuities, this expelleth the dead byrth.

Item, take of Galbanum a dram or somewhat lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the Galbanum beyng dissolued, geue it to the woman to drynke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take Galbanum, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Motherwort, and of this make a plaster by puttynge to of waxe a certayne quantitie: then take a linnen cloth of suche length and breadth that it may couer al the belly vnder the Hauell to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this cloth spreade this plaster of the thiknesse of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called Diatessarum, & geue of it to the woman for to drynke, and it wyll expel the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines prosyfe not, then
must

The second booke.

musste be bled more seuerē and harde remedies with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and suche other thynges made for the nonce. And fyrste the woman musste be layde a long byrght, the middle parte of her bodye lying hyer then all the rest, companied of women assisting her about, to comfort her, and to keepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked out, she ryse not withall. Then let the Midwyfe annoynt her leste hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other that may make it soople and smothe, and holding out her fingers shutting together her hand, let her put it into the Matrix, to feele and perceyue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better put in hokes, and suche other instrumentes to plucke it out withall.

If so be that it lye the head forewarde, then fasten a hooke eyther vppon one of the eyes of it, or the roofof the mouth, or vnder the chin, or on one of the shoulders, whiche of these partes shall seeme moste commodious and handsome to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to drawe it out very tenderlye for hurtyng of the woman.

But yf it lye the feete forewarde, then fasten the hooke on the bone aboue the priuie partes, or by some rybbe, or some of the backe bones, or of the brest bones: and when this hooke is thus fastened, the Midwyfe may not by and by drawe and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her leste hande

The second booke. Fol.xciii.

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other parte of the byrth, ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her drawe both togeather, so that the byrth may proceede and come forth on both sydes equally, moouyng it from one syde to another, tyll ye haue gotten out altogether, and now and then to helpe it in the comyng forth with the foresynger wel annoynted, yf it chaunce to stycke, or to be let any where : and as it cometh forth, alway to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes onely of the byrth doo appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned bpwarde agayne, by reason of the narrownesse of the place, then bynde it with a linnen cloth, that it slyp not bp agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde vntyl such tyme that the whole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cut it of from the body, and euen so doo yf both handes appeare fyrst at once, or one legge, or both, yf they can not be returned backe to be otherwysse taken out conueniently. As ye cut the armes from the shoulers, so lykewysse cuttyng the legges from the thyghes, for the whiche purpose the Chyrurgions haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which such legges & armes may soone be cut from the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cut from the bodye, then turne the vesse, so that it may easlye proceede with as lyttle payne to the mother as

The second booke.

maye be.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swelling, or resort of humours, that it wyll not conueniently issue out at that narrow place: then let the Wydwyse with a sharpe penknife cutte open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne forth, and so the head to ware lesse, able to be plucked out. But yf it be so, that not by anye suche casualtie the head be bygge, but onely of a natural groweth, then muste the head be broken in peeces, and the partes euermore taken forth with suche instrumentes as the Chirurgicals haue redy and necessarye for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come forth, yet the breast part woulde not folowe for greatnesse: then must ye breake and cut lyke wyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it maye be had forth. And euen so lyke wyse, yf all the reste of the body shoulde be so swollen that it woulde not proceede ne come forth: then must it lyke wyse be broken in peeces, and so had forth.

Furthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrice be exulcerate or appostumate, so that the passage be made the narrower by that meanes, the dryer, and the more contract: then must ye fyrst studie and endeuour you to soople and ease the places by oyles and other greaces, suche as I spake of sufficiently before in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.

Also

Also yf the dead byrth come sydelong, then must ye do what maye be done to conuerte and turne it to suche fashon, that it may moſte eaſelye be brought forth. The Matrix and other ſecretes muſt be annoynted, perfumed, and vapoured with ſuch thinges the which may make it more ample and large. If it can not be thus had forth whole, then let it be cutte out by peece meale, as is befoze ſpoken of. And yf after this deliuerance the flowes iſſue ouer vehemently, then vſe ſuche thynges as haue vertue to reſtrayne them, of the whiche I haue ſpoken in the. vi. Chapter befoze.

But contrarpe to all this, yf it chaunce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chylde hauyng lyfe in it: then ſhall it be meete to kepe open the womans mouth, and alſo the neather places, ſo that the chylde may by that meanes both receiue and alſo expell ayre and breath, whiche otherwyſe myght be ſtopped, to the deſtruction of the chylde, and then to turne her on the left ſyde, and there to cut her open, and ſo take out the chylde. They that be borne

after this faſhon, are called Ceſars, for be-

cauſe they be cutte out of theyr mo-

thers belly: whereupon alſo the

noble Romayne Ceſar the

ſyſte, toke his

name.

The second booke.

In the last Chapter of this booke be
brieuely recited certayne expert medicines,
which be most requisite to the cheefe
purpose entended in this
present booke. Cap. r.

If somuche as the principal en-
tent and ende of this booke is, to
shewe the meanes and medici-
nes whereby the womans la-
bour maye be made the more ea-
sie: therefore here I wyll com-
pendiously set forth certayne medicines, oyn-
mentes, and emplasters, suche as shalbe suffici-
ent and mooste requisite to that purpose, and
suche agayne as haue ben well experimented
and practised: The which also it shalbe conue-
nient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in
a redynesse agaynst theyr tyme of neede. For
although that nature be the cheefe and head
doer in all this busynes, (as in conception,
bearyng, and the byrth:) yet notwithstanding,
medicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and for-
tifie nature, being sometyme impedit and lette,
yea, impotent and not able to doo her office as
should appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour
is come, yf she labour long and paynfully, and
yet the byrth do not proceede: then for the more
expedite and quicke deliuerance, geue her of
this medicine folowing.

Take of the finest Cinamome that may be
chosen

chosen. iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe fyrst shred it in very small peeces, and then beate it to very fyne powdred.

Item, of Saffron dyed by the fyre til it be blacke, of Cassia lignea, fyne Ribarbe, Sauine dyed, Myrre, of eche of these seuen scruples, of pure Muske. xvi. graines, etery of these simples exquisitely by them selues powdred, and then perfectly mixed in one, with. vi. oz. vii. droppes of Baluesey, temper the whole masse into lyttle roundels oz trochiskes, eche waying a dramme. And in tyme of neede at the womans labour, geue her hardy the waight of. vi. d. of these trochiskes beatē into fine powder, with. iiii. spoonfulles of Hysope water, and other. iiii. of good wine secke.

This medicine is not onely profytable at this tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notablie good to expell the after byrth, oz any other suche lyke matter in that place; hauyng neede of expulsion.

Item, yf neede doo so requyre, it shalbe very expedient to haue this emplaster solowynge in a redynesse, the which spread abrode vpon a linnen cloth, either els vpon leather, and so applyed to the bottome of the bellye in as large manner as may be, dilateth and openeth the portes of that parts, amplifieth, enlargeth, and dissolueth them, whereby that that is contained in the bellye findeth the freer issue, to the lesse greouaunce of the mother.

Take of Emplastrū de Melliloto, of Diachilō of

¶ iii

Oxycroceum,

The second booke.

Oxycroceum, of eche two ounces, of the roots of Asarum, of wild Pepper dried, the leaues of Bemoim, of tossed Cummin, of eche two dragmes, of good Castorium, iii. dragmes, of the oyle of Wyl one or two spoonfulls: such of these as are to be powdred, beate them fyne, and then cuer a softe fyre, temper them altogeather perfectly.

Item, the same emplaster may serue to be layde ouer all the bottome of the bellie, and the priue passage, to prouoke and drawe forth the latter or hynder birth, yf neede be. But yf that be not strong enough, then lay to this plaster following, whiche is of much more efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapintū, Myrthe of eche an ounce, of Colloquintida, Heleborus niger, of eche two drams, of Castorium, Perethrum, & Storax liquida, of eche three drammes, of Turpentine & Petroleum, of eche foure drammes. fyrt ouer a soft fyre temper the Turpentine, Petroleum, & Storax liquida togeather, then thereto adde Colloquintida, Heleborus, Castorium & Perethrum, being fyrt well and finely beaten to powder: after put to the Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum and Myrthe, being fyrt dissolved in good Waluesey, and so take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effect to prouoke the after birth.

Item, bntet Leekes, stamped and fryed with butter, and so layde plaster wyse to the belly, serueth wel for the same.

Item,

The second booke. Fol.xcvi.

Item, the leaues or flowres of Marygoldes drunke with whyte wine, expell the after byrth. Also the sayde leaues and flowres dyed, and at tyme of neede, kyndeled with a waxe candle, and the fume thereof receyued vnderneath into the priue part, prouoketh out merueylously the after byrth.

Item, a comfortable potion, to be taken after deliuerance of the childe.

Take of the Sweetest garden Mintes, greene or drye, of the leaues of Baubie greene also or drye, of the leaues of Maioram, the rootes of Fenel, the pyth taken out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemary, of Ruds, of Bozage, and of dyed red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull; more or lesse, as it pleaseth you, of Cloues and Wale byrled a little, the waight of two pence, of Cinamome thredde in small portions the waight of .vi. grotes, kupt all these together in a cloute or lyttle linnen bagge, and hange the same bagge in a quart of Bozage water the space of a daye and a nyghte: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserue the water, of the which take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wine Seeke, or els Muscadell: and being mist together, put thereto a lyttle of the conserue of Barberfes, conserue of Bozage flowres, conserue of Rosemarye flowres, and drynke hereof euerye day the space of foure or fīue dayes, at once foure spoonefulles, of the water, and other foure of the foresayde wine. And this potion shall both comforte the woman, and also helpe

The second booke.

greatly to the expulsion of all noysome thynges to be expelled.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common blage to geue often to women in theyr chyldbedyth camdels of Otmeale, thyn-
f fising and saying thereby the woman to be scou-
red, whereas in deede the sayde Otmeale is a
notable bynder and dryer: Therefore ye shal un-
derstand, that the ryght vse thereof is, to geue it
to suche as haue already ben well and sufficient-
ly scoured and cleansed from theyr after byrth,
and other thynges to be looked for in this tyme
and case, but yf the woman be not sufficiently
purged already, then geue her no Otmeale cam-
dels, ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, praying the wo-
men readers hereof, to accept and suffice them-
selues with these fewe medicines here in this
Chapter mentioned, and often by me and other
practised: The whiche thing if they shal do so,
it shal (no doubt) be occasion to me the sooner
to retake this matter in hande agayne, and to
refreshe and furnyshe the same with newe and
much more excellent experiences then hath ben
yet hytherto read or seene in any booke concer-
nyng suche matters.

And as touchyng the aboue Crochiskes and
Emplasters described here in this place, ye shal
fynde them alwayes redy made in

Buchlers berie in

London.

In this first Chapter of the thyrd booke,
is fyrst declared the matters contened,
and then howe the Infant newe-
ly borne must be handled, nou-
rished, & looked to. Cap. i.



In the second booke

We haue suffici-
ently & at length
declared the ma-
ners, fashions, &
diuersities of byr-
thes, With the
daungers & perils
often chauncing to

what is to
be done
when the
chylde is
borne.

the Women at theyr labours, and after
the same. And nowe here in this thyrd
booke shalbe entreated what is to be
done to the infant borne, and howe to
chose a Nurse, & of her office: With ma-
nifolde medicines & remedies agaynst
sundry infirmities, which esloncs hap-
pen to Infantes in their infansie.

Then after that the Infant is once come to
lyght, by and by the Nauyll must bee cutte three
syngers breadth from the belly, and so knitte vp,
and let be strued on the head of that that remay-
neth, of the powder of Bole armenisacke, & San-
guis draconis, Sarcocola, Myrre, and Cummin,
of eche lyke muche, beaten to powder: then vpon
that

The chyldre booke.

that bynde a peece of wol, dypped in oyle Olife, that the powder fall not of. Some vse tyste to knit the Nauyll and after to cutte it, so much as is before rehearsed.

And furthermore some saye, that of what length the reste of the Nauyll is left, of the same length shal the chyldes tong be, if it be a man child. Itē Auicenna saith, that diuers things may be knowen by marking of the chyldes Nauyl: For (as he sayth) When the woman is deliuered of her first childe, then behold the Nauyl of the chyld: which if in that part of it which is next vnto the body it haue neuer a wrinkle, it protendeth and doth signifie perpetuall fruitfulness: forth sterilitie or barrennesse: and yf it haue any wrinkles in it, then so many wrinkles, so many children shal the woman haue in time to come. Also some ad to this, & say, that if there be litle space betwene these wrinkles in the nauil, the shal there be also litle space betwene the bearyng of the children: if muche, it signifieth long time betweene the bearing of them. But these sayings be neither in the gospel of the day, ne of the nyght.

Nowe

The thirde booke. Fol.xxix.

Nowe to returne to our purpose, when that the Nauill is cut of, and the rest knytte by, annoynt all the chyldes body with the oyle of A. comes, for that is syngulerly good to conspyne, stedfast, and to defende the body from nopsome thynges, whiche may chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and suche other thynges: whiche yf the Infant be greued withal straight after the byrth, beyng yet very tender, it shoulde hurt it greatly.

After this annoyntyng, washe the Infant with warme water, and with your synger (the naye beyng pared) open the chyldes nolethryles, and purge them of the fylthynesse. And also that the Nurse handle so the chyldes syttyng place, that it may be prouoked to purge the belly. And cheefely it must be defended from ouer much colde, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant or the knotte of the Nauill is fallen (the whiche commonly chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth day) then on the rest remainyng , strewe the powder or Asses of a Calles hoofes burnt, or of Snayle Shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wine.

Furthermore, when the Infant is swaddled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and heede that the bynde euery part ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tenderesse and gentle entreatyng, and not crookedly and confusely, the whiche
also

The thirde booke.

also must be done oftentymes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in young and tender ympees, plantes, and twygges: the whiche, euen as ye bowe them in theyr youth, so wyll they euer more remayne vnto age. And euen so the Infant, pf it be bounde and swadled, the members lying ryght and strayght, then shall it growe strayght and bpright. If it be crookedly handled, it wyll growe lyke wyse. And to the yll negligence of many Nurses, may be imputed the crookednesse and deformitie of many a man and woman, whiche other wyse might seeme aswell fauoured as any other.

By the one-
ly negly-
gence of
Nurses
many childe
groweth
crooked,
ked, & wyse
legged.

Item, let the chyldes eyes be oftentymes wy-
ped and cleansed with a fyne and cleane linnen
cloth or with sylke. And let the armes of the
Infant be verpe strayght layde downe by the
sydes, that they may growe ryght, and some-
tyme strokyng the bellye of the chyld before the
bellyche or bladder, to helpe to ease, and to pro-
uoke the chyld to the making of water: and
when ye lay it in the Cradell to sleepe, let the
Cradell in such a place, that neyther the beames
of the Sunne by day, neyther the Moone by
nyght come on the Infant, but rather let it in
a darke and shadowy place, laying also the head
euer some what hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed two or three
times in the day, & that anone after sleepe, in the
winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with
like warme water: nether let it tary long in the
water, but vnto such tyme as the body begynne

to waxe red for heate, but take heede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearing another day.

Then, to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dreyed with gentle and soft linnen clothes warmed, and then to laye it on her lappe the backe bpwarde, the whiche with her handes let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it bp, and to swaddell it, and when it is swadled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nozethrylies of it, is very good for the eye sight. And so to lay it to rest.

Of the Nurse and her mylke, and howe longe the chylde shoulde sucke. Cap. ii.



S concerning the bringing bp, nourish-
mente and geuyng of
sucke to the chylde, it
shalbe beste that the
mother geue her child
sucke her selfe, for the
mothers mylk is more
conuenient and agree-
able to the Infante,
then anye other wo-
mans, and more doth it nozyshe it, for because
that in the mothers belly it was wont to the
same, and fed with it, and therefore also it doth
more desyrouslye couet the same, as that with
the which it is best acquaynted. And to be short,
the mothers mylke is most holsommet for the
chylde,

The mo-
thers mylke
best & most
familier to
the chylde.

The thyrð booke.

Item, if the mothers mylke be somewhat sharpe or colleryke, let her neuer geue the chyld her breast fastyng. If it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sicknesse, or that her breastes be sore, and her mylke corrupted: then let her chosse a holsome Nurse, with these conditions folowynge.

**He chose a
good Nurse.**

lome; neyther to fearefull or tymolous: for these afflictions and qualities be pernicious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe forth through the mylke into the chyld, making the chyld of lyke condition and manners: Also that they be not ouerlyght and wanton of behauiour. ffrstly, that her breastes be full, and haue sufficient plentie of mylke, and that they be neyther to great, losse, hangyng, and saggyng, ne to lyttle, harde, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

Also looke vppon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, grey, or reddyshe, neyther lowe, sharpe, saltysh, or brackyshe, neyther thynne and fluy, neyther ouer grosse and thicke, but temperately whyte, and pleasaunt in taste.

The consy-
deration of
the Purles
mylke.

And to be shorte, that mylke is best and mosse to be chosen, of the which a droppe, being milked softly vpon the nayle of the thumbe, holdyng your synger styll, it rolleth not of, neyther flyteth abrode, but yf ye moue your hande a lytle, it well flyde of by and by: but yf when it is milked on the nayle, it spreade abrode, and flye by and by, then is it to thynne, but yf it cleaue styll when that ye moue a litle your hande, then is it to spisse & thicke. The meane betweene both is best.

If it be so that the Purles mylke be to hot, sharpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the chyld sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometyme it chaunceth that the mothers or Purles mylke dooth fayle or decrease, the whiche

The thirde booke.

Diuers cau-
ses of the de-
fect of say-
ling of milke.

which thing may come by diuers causes: as by synnelle, by disease in the brestes, or by taking of colde in the same, and so stoppe and cludder the mylke, or for because she lacketh suche thynges the which might engender mylke, other by ouermuch fastyng, hunger and thyrst, the which causes must be well considered: and then accordyng to that, minister a remedie.

Things which do augment and encrease mylke be these.

Let her be to eate Barlapp, either the seede or the roote: also the seede or roote of fennel, sodden in the broth made with Barly or Cicercula, let her eate of that with other meates that she feedeth on.

Item, to eate sheepes brestes, & the milke of them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and dissolve it in warme whyte wine, the which let the Nursed drinke.

Item, booyng vnder the brestes dooth well without scarification.

Item, a plaster for the same of frankencense, Masticke, and Pitche, layde to the brestes, or vnder the brestes, the thynne syde being annoynted with oyle, leasse it shoulde cleaue ouer fast to the place.

Item, it shalbe very good to rubbe soflye with the hande the brestes, or els in bathyng after dynner or supper, to cause some to sucke her breast.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lillies, or of violettes, and myngle with it Mylke, Ensence,
and

and Laudanum, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of wooll, and clappe it to the bestes, and soke them with it.

Item, washe them, and soke them often times with wine, in the whiche is dicocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, Violettes, and Xiloaloes. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, Cardamomum, & also the yolke of an egge.

Item, it is good for her to eate freshe Cheese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also pottage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fine flowre, tempered with Milke and Suger, puttyng to it also a quantitie of Fenel seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item, take of Annis seede, of Siler montanū, of eche three drams, of chistall beaten to powder two drams, & as muche of Suger, geue her this to drinke about ten dayes, at morning, euening, and mydday.

Item, take of Fenell seede, or the leaues, & of Horehounde, of eche two handfulls, of Annis seede foure drams, of Saffron beaten one scruple, also of freshe Butter three ounces, and seethe all these in sufficient water, making hereof a plaster. the same plaster whilest it is hote, lay it to the Purses best.

Item, take of Commin seede an ounce and an halfe, & of clarified Honey three ounces, seeth it in siue pyntes of water altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seeth to the thyrde part, and

The thyrde booke.

of this decoction geue the Nurse often tyme s to drynke.

Item, take of Beetes well washed one ounce, of Commin halfe an ounce, of Honye syre ounces, of these myngled and tempered together, make an electuarie, of the whiche let her take both in the moynynge and euenynge, at eche tyme a spoonefull.

Item, take two drams of Cryfall beaten into fyne powder, and diuide that in foure equall partes: one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made eyther of Cicer, or elles of peason.

Also all these thynges folowynge, encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes: Annis, and Annis seede, Dyll and the seede, Dorehounde, Cardamomum, frethe Cheese, wortes made of olde Cheese, Cicer, Cristal beatē to powder, taken with Honey, Lettuse, Fenel, wine in which Rosemary or Sauery be sodden.

Item, to abstayne from venery or mans company: for yf she vse that, it shall spende and consume the mylke, and make it vnsauery and vnholsome, neyther can the chyld well brooke it, but mooste commonly shal cast it by agayne, because it can not digest it.

Also it shalbe beste that the chyld sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is borne, but rather of some other womans, for a day or two, for because that the creame (as they call it) straight after the byrth, the fyrst day
in

William ward
William ward
William ward

In al women doth thicken and congeale.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Purse be ouer
soze laxed, or that she be ouer bounde, so that
she take anye medicines to remedie it: then let
another geue the chylde sucke whylest she be
recovered agayne. And when the chylde is layde
in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste
thzough ouer muche rockyng and styrryng, the
chylde's stomache turne, and the Wythe there
corrupt for lacke of rest.

Auiscn aduiseeth to geue the chylde sucke two
yeares: howe be it amonge vs mooste common-
ly, they sucke but one yere. And when ye wyll
weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a litle
and a litle, and to make for it litle pyles of
bzeade and Sugar to eate, and accustome it so,
tyl it be able to eate all maner of meate: and
this shall suffice for the education and byrnyng
bp of infantess at this tyme. Notwithstandyng
dytters other thynges here are left vnspoken of,
another tyme God wylling we shal declare them
at large.

*Howe long
the chylde
shold sucke*

Of diuers diseases and infirmities whiche
chaunce to chyl dren lately borne, and the
remedies therfore. Cap. iiii.



Although there be in ma-
ner infinite diseases which
happen to Infantess, as
writeth Hipocrates, Galenus,

*Many dis-
eases of In-
fantess.*

Di

Rasis,

The thynde booke.

Racis, Auicenna, and diuers other : yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here onely suche of them whiche moſte commonly happen to the ſame, & that be theſe : exulceration of the gummes, ſtice of the belly, or ouermuch looſenes of the ſame, the belly harde bounde, the crampe, the coughe and diſtillation of the head, ſhort wyndnes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clypppyng of the mouth, apoſtume in the eares, apoſtume in the brayne, ſwell yng and bolnyng of the eyes, ſkumme or creame of the eyes, the feuer, knowyng in the bellye, the body ſwell yng and puffed vp, often ſneeling, wheales or bladders of the body, ſwell yng of the coddes, ſwell yng of the Nauyl, vnſleepineſſe, yering, appetite to parbreake, fearefulneſſe in the dreames, the mother, iſſuyng out of the fundament gutte, wormes in the bellye, chaufyng, the ſallyng ſickneſſe, the conſumtion, the paſſye, treimbyng of the partes of the body, the ſtone, goggle eyes.

How

The thirde booke. Fol. Ciiij.

¶ How to cure and to remedie all these, now we
wyl shewe in order.

Firſt in exulceration of the gummes, are wont certayne puſhes, and as it were wheales to growe on the gummes, or in the corners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to much greeuance: and to remedie this, it ſhal be good that ye with your ſynger rubbe the Infantes gummes, and the puſhes or wheelkes withal, and then to anoynt the ſame gummes with oyntment made of VERNES grece, HARES or CONYES brayne, oyle of Camomel mixt with hony: then take water, and in it ſeethe Camomell and Hyll, the whiche water beyng hotte, powre it on the chyldes head, holding it a foote aboute the head.

Of exulceration of the gums.

¶ Of the ſtre and ouermuch looſenes
of the bellye.

For this take the ſeede of Roſes, Cōmin, Annise, & the ſeede of Smalage, beate all theſe togeather, and make them plafter wyſe, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

For the ſtre in chyldren.

And farther, yf that it which the Infant boy, deth be of redde or yelow colour, then geue it to drynke of the ſyrop of Roſes, or of Crabbes, other els of Pomegranates, tempered with a litle Hynte water.

Item, take the ſeede of Sorrell, and beate it, then temper it togeather with the yolke of a

The thirde booke.

rosted egge, and geue that to the childe to eat, or els take of the same seede bruised fyrst, and then see the it in sayre runnyng water, thereof let the chylde drynke two or thre tymes the day.

Item, take a gal, and beate it to powder, then see the it in water, with this water temper Barlye meale, or the meale of Mellium, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes bellye.

Item, yf that that cometh from the chylde be whytyshe, then take of Nutmegs the weight of a peny, and of whyte Frankencense a scruple, or the waight of two pence, the which temper with the iuyce of a Quince, & geue it to the chylde to drynke.

Item, take the meale of Barlye, temper it with the iuyce of Plantane, and a lyttle vaine-ger, and make it plaster wyse, and lay it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrst a lyttle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of Centinodium, and the white of an egge, & temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dried red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Masticke, Frankencense, Sole Armeniake, Sanguis Draconis, & the rines of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrt warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chylde with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce
of

of plantane the more and the lesse, and in this put clay of an olde furnace or ouen, and make of it a plaster, and lay it to the chldes belly.

C To vnloose the childe beyng bounde.

If the chylde be so bounde, that it can not long time haue any stoole, then make a suppositary of Hony, sodden til it be harde and masse, and let the suppositarie be of the length of your litle fynger, and the bygnesse of two wheate straws bound together, then dip it into oyle, & conuey it into the chldes fundement.

Item, lyke wise you may make a suppositar of the stalke and the roote of Beates, or els of the roote called Dresse, or flouredeluce roote, made of the quantitie before spoken, and conueied into the sitting place of the childe.

Item, to geue to the infant as muche Honie as a pease to drynke, and to rubbe the belly a lytle, and to souple it with a peece of wooll dypped in oyle, or dypped in Bulles gall, and layd to the Navel.

Item, you may geue vnto the Nurse a medicine whiche hath vertue to vnbinde and loose, and the next day after let the child sucke her, and it wyl loose also the chylde.

Item, take of smal Mallowes, of great Mallowes, of eche an handfull, of Fenegreke & Line-seede of eche an ounce, of Holyoke two ounces, of figges the number of .x. see the al these together in water, and then stampe them in a mortar, and

The thyrd booke.

put into it of Butter, and of Hennes grece, of
eche two ounces, and of Saffron one scruple,
and make a plaster of it vpon a linnen cloth, of
the thickest of a straw, and lay it to the chldes
belly, a day and a nyght.

If this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes
Cicotrine one dram, of Heleborus both niger &
albus, of eche .xv. graines, beate these to powder,
then temper them with thre spoonefuls of the
iuyce of Malwurt, or of Ore gall, in this licour
dippe wooll, and lay it to the Navel the breadth
of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Malwurt, and of Mill
meale, and seethe those togeather tyll they be
thicke, then make a plaster thereof, and lay it to
the belly beneath the Navel.

¶ Remedie for the crampe, or distention of members.

If it chaunce that the infant be taken with the
disease called the crampe, the whiche for the
most part commeth of indigestion, and of the
weakenesse of the power attractiue, and special-
ly in suche chyldren the whiche be verie fat and
moyst, then shal ye annoynt al along the backe
of the infante with the oyle of blew flowrede-
luce, or els white Lillies, either the oyle of Rue.

If the crampe take the childe whilest it stret-
cheth forth the armes, legges, and other mem-
bers (as we be wont in gaping or yaning) then
let

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the which prime Roses, Cousloppes, or the flowres of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with the oyle of violets, and the oyle of sweete Almons tempered together: and if the chylde be in great heat, annoynt hym with the oyle of violettes, or with oyle Olive, tempered with a litle whyte ware, and also powre on the chyldes head the oyle of violettes.

¶ Remedic for the cough and distillation, or Catarthes of the head,

Somtymes the chylde is sore encombred with the coughe, and with distillation or running of humours out of the head, to the nose, the mouth & the brest, & which ye shal remedy thus.

First powre warme water on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the chyldes head, and so do continually the space of halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a litle Honie on the chyldes tongue to chaue hypon: then put your finger into the chyldes mouth, and depresse or holde downe the innermost part, or the roote of the tongue nexte to the throte, to prouoke the chylde to vomite, and to boyde the grosse and biscouse humours whiche be cause of this yll.

Item, take Gumme Arabiche, Gumme Dragagant, the seede of Quinces, the styce of Lycorisse, and Sugar peneditum, all this beaten together

The thirde boobe.

gether, geue every day to the childe a quantitie with Mylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke with Almondes blanchēd, and only the iuyce oz water of fenell, whereof when it is well sodden, let the chylde eate oz drynke moornyng and euenyng, oz anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the cough haue exasperat and made rough the tongue and the rooſe of the mouth, then take of the seedes of Quinces two ſpoonefulls, bryſe them a litle, and ſtpe them in warme water the ſpace of two oz three houres, then ſtrayne the biſcoule & groſſe water from them through a ſtrayner, and that remayneth, frye it togeather in a fryng panne with Sugar Penidium, & the oyle of ſweete Almondes, thereof making an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the childe to receiue: yf the chylde haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the ſame electuarie, the iuyce of a ſweete Pomegranate.

Item, agaynſt the cough and ouermuche heate, take the ſeede of white Pople and Dragagant, of eche two drams, of the ſeedes of Cowardes ſoure drams, and beate all theſe together, and geue at once the weight of ſoure pence to the childe, with the water in whiche reaſons haue ben ſodden.

Item, take reaſons, and dooyng away the graynes of it, ſeethe them togeather with water in a fryng pan, ſo that they burne not to the bottome of the pan: then take it from the fyre,
and

and beate it well in a mortar, temperyng there-
withall Suger Penidium, and geue of this in
the moornyng and euenyng to the chylde.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause,
then take a litle Hyrre beaten to powder, and
temper it with a quantitie of warmed Honye,
and the oyle of Sweete Almondes, and of this
geue vnto the chylde.

Furthermore the Nurse must auoyde al such
thynges, the which may engender cough, as Vi-
neger, ouer muche salted meates, Cheese, Nuts,
& all sharpe thynges. Also she must annoynt the
chylde's brest with butter, and with Dialthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasons, and frye
them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a
morter, and to that adde as much of Suger
Penidium, with a litle oyle of Violettes, & make
an electuarie of these, and geue to the chylde the
mountenaunce of a hasell Nut.

Remedy for short wynde.

MAny tymes chaunceth also to Infantes
difficultie of breathing or short windnesse,
the which to remedie, take Lineseede, and
beate it, & geue of it vnto the chylde with Hony:
but if the disease encrease on the childe, and that
the wynde pypes in maner seeme stopped, then
annoynt well the eares, and all the places about
the eares with oyle Olive, and also the tongue,
for to prouoke vomite, and then powre a li-
tle warme water into the chylde's mouth to
washe it withal, and geue to it a litle Lineseede,
tempered with Honye and beaten, made after
the

The thirde booke.

the fashion of an electuarie.

Item, yf the chyld haue besydes this also the flux: then geue vnto it the Syrope of Myrtys, other els Dates sodden with Milke and flowre.

Agaynst wheales or bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the children, Wheales and blisters on theyr tongue and mouth, Whiche thynges commeth of the sharpenesse and eagerness of the Nurses mylke, the mouth and tongue of the Infant beyng so tender, that the least thyng that toucheth it, shal offend it: wherfore, besides that it is great payne to the chylde thus to be blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it is also very perillous and daungerous. For suche Wheales which be not ripe & seeme blacke, betoken death: which yf they be whyte or yelowyshe, then they be of lesse peryl.

Agaynst this yll, take violettes and Roses, and seethe them in a litle Rose water, and therewith washe the blisters.

Item, take the iuyce of Lettuse, the iuyce of
Petie

Pettie mozel, and the iuyce of Purlsayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therewith che whelkes. And if the foresayde blysters oz whelkes be blackishe : then adde to the foresayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item, if the same be very moyste, then take Myre, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them wel together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynt the chyldes tongue therewith.

Item, take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully ripe, other els of vnyrpe grapes, whiche is called Mergens, and with that annoynt the tongue.

Item, it is very good to washe the tongue with redde wine, and then to strewe vpon it the pouder of Galles, oz els of the barke oz rine of Frankencense.

If ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper : then take Bole armeniake, Psidium, and Sumach, of eche three drams : also of Galles two drams, of Alome one dram, all these beate together, and searse then thzough a searser, and strewe that powder on the blysters.

Item, if these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse suche thynges whiche are moyste and colde, and let her chawe in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the whiche lay on the Infantes mouth and tongue.

Item, Amilum oz starch tempered together with
Rose

The second booke.

Rose water, & put on the chyldes tongue, is good.

Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oringes, and do of this on the chyldes tongue in like maner: but if the wheales or blysters be somewhat yelowyshe, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselane. But if the wheales seme whytyshe, then take of Myrre and of Saffron, of eche one dramme, of Sugar candye two drams, and beate these to powder, and lay of it on the wheales and tongue.

Of exulceration or clefture, chappynge or chynnyng of the mouth.

Sometymes by reason of the hardnes of the Purles pappes, the chyldes lippes and mouth be exulcerate, hauing in maner of cleftes & chinnes in them: and in this case take tozed woll, & dyppe it in the iuyce of Plantane, or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hens greace, euery of them being warme, and with this annoynt the mouth and lippes of the chyld.

Of appostumation and running of the eares.



WHEN that humoures and matter yssueth out of the eares, whiche properly commeth of aboundaunt humours in all the bodye, and most specially in the head: then take a peece of wooll, and dyppe it in Honey mixt with redde wine, to the whiche is put also a litle quantitie

quantitie of Aloome beate to powder, or of Saffron, then make of the same as it were a tente, and put it in the chyldes eare, and when the tent hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and fylthynesse of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that which commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, & temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the powder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger, and doo lyk wyse.

But yf the chylde haue great payne and doulour by wyndnesse, bentositie, and the humours in this place: then seethe Organy and Myrthe with oyle Olyue, and so beyng warme, put of it into the eares.

Of apostumation in the head.



If there be any apostume engendered in the head, (which many tymes chaunceth) the which causeth the chekes & eyes to be greatly payned, & the eye sight to waxe wannyshe or tawnye: then must be applied such thinges which may refrigerate & coole the braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Gowardes, the iuyce of Nyghtshade, and iuyce of Purselane, and temper them with the oyle of Roles, in this dyppe a peece of wooll, and lay it to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye, dip it agayne.

The thirde booke.

C Of the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

A Gainst swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take Licium, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chylde's eyes, and bynde it to the place with a fine and soft linnen cloth, then afterwarde washe the eyes with water in which Camomel and Basil haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swelling the eyes be not red, neyther the browes swollen: then take Myrthe, Aloes, Saffron, and the leaues of Roses, and temper al these, and stipe them in olde wine, and binde it to the chylde's eyes with some linnen cloth, and into the chylde's nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolued in womans Mylke.

C Of the scum or whyte of the eye.

A Gainst the scum or white of the eye, which for the moste parte happeneth to chyl dren through ouer much crying and weeping, take the iuyce of Solatrum, and drop of the same into the chylde's eye, and yf by the same chaunce the hayne of the eyes waxe reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

C Against immoderate heate, or the feuer.

I f the Infant be in great and behement heate contrary to nature, the whiche is called a feuer: first it shalbe the Purles part, to eate & vse such thynges the which coole and moyssen.

Also

Also to geue vnto the Infant of these thinges folowynge. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Gourdes, Sugar, with a lyttle Camphire mixed herewithall, tempered well togeather.

Item, it is very good to prouoke it to sweating.

Item, take of the iuyce of woyme wood, of Plantane, Walowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and see the them a lyttle on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barly meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chyldes breste. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and myxe them togeather, with this opyntment (beyng colde) annoynt the chyldes forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wystes, and the pulses, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and cldryed Roses, and powdred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make thereof on the fyre a plaster, the which lay to the chyldes brestes somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chyld is washed, let it be done with water in which is sodden such thynges which coole: as Lettuse, Purslane, Endiue, Plantane, and such other.

Agaynst frettyng or gnawynge in the belly.

If the chyld be vexed with frettyng and gnawynge in the belly, the whiche thyng ye shall knowe by the immoderate cryng of the chyld, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great cryng: then shall you take

Ri

warme

The thirde booke.

warne water, wherein hath been sodden La-
uender, Commin, fenell seede, or the seede of
Dill, and oyle Olive, tempering them together,
and herein dip a peece of wooll, and there with
soke the chyldes belly oftentymes.

Agaynst swelling of the body.



When the chyldes body or any parte
thereof is swollen & puffed by, then
take the toppes of Elder tree, and of
malwurt, and seeth them in white
wine, and therein lay the Infante,
specially yf it be not taken with ouer great heat:
but yf so be that with swelling in the head the
belly be swollen also, then take Myrrhe, Aloes
epatike, and Saffron, and beate them altogea-
ther, & temper them with the iuyce of Beanes, &
lay it to the chyldes head.

Against often sneesing.

Sometymes the Infantes be sore troubled
and vexed with often sternutation and
sneesing: whiche thyng yf it come of the
apostume in the head, then shal ye minister such
thynges to the head, whiche refrigerate and
coole, whether it be oyles, oymntmentes, iuyces
of the hearbes, or other thynges. If this come
of any other cause then of apostume: then take
Basil, be it greene or drye, and put of the iuyce
or powder of it into the chyldes noyse. But yf
this sneesing come and begyn with heate, and
that the chyldes eyes seeme as they grewe in-
warde for payne thereof: then lay to the chyldes
head

head the leaues of Purslane, or Gowardie cutte in thinne lyes, and tempered with the oyle of Roses, and Barley meale, and also the yolke of an egge.

Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

THese wheles yf they appeare blacke bypon the body, they signifie peryll of lyfe, and so muche the more, the greater quantitie that there is of them: but yf they seeme whytthe or reddishe, it is no peryll, and may easly be cured. Wherfore take the leaues of the redde Rose, the leaues of Mirtils, and of Tamariscus, and seeth these in water, and in that water wet a linnen cloth, and soke therewith the whelkes.

Item, lyke wyse it is good to annoynt the same with the oyle of Roses, of Mirtilles, and Tamariscus. If the whelkes be whyte or reddish, then let them be rype before ye minister anye thing to them: and when they be open and begun to matter, then to cleanse, purisse, and to drye them: being ripe and broken, it is verye good to washe the same whekes with Mulsim or Hydromell, in whiche Salt peter is dissolved. Mulsim and Hydromell is, water and Honeye sodden together.

Agaynst swellng of the coddess.

Many tymes chaunceth to chyl dren (thorowe ouermuche cryng) swelling about the coddess, and sometymes burstenesse,

R ii

and

The thirde booke.

and swelling in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swelling somtymes cometh by inflammation or great heate, and somtyme with onely wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddys will somtymes appeare so styffe as a tabour, and shyne as it were an horne. The remedye for this is, to take a quarte of double Beere woozt, and therein seethe of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue a quarter of an handfull, of Fenell, Dyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull: cutte and brooke all these hearbes together, and seethe them from the quarte to the pinte, then straine them strongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer seethe so muche beane flowze as may serue to make a plaster, thereto addyng at the latter ende two or thre spoonesfulls of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddys. If the swelling come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, suche as I haue often tymes spoken of before.

¶ Agaynst swelling of the Nauyll,

Also somtymes the chyldes Nauyll swelleth, and specially straght after the byrth when it is cutte. For this, take Spyke Celtyke, and seethe it in the oyle of Almondes, myxed with a lytle Turpentine: then in this dyppe wooll, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swelling come of o-
uermuchyng crying, cough, or of a stroke or fall:
Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of
sayre

laye olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, & temper these with red wine, and then in this dyp a peece of tow, and lay it to the Hauyll.

¶ Agaynst vnleeppnesse.

Against vnleeppnesse, that is, when the child is destitute and wanteth his due and naturall rest, al the while crying and weeping. For this take two heads (with the seedes therein contained) of whyte Popie, and with one sponesfull of Rose water, and three or foure droppes of wineger, stampe them in a mortar reasonably, then adde thereto two sponesfulls of womans milke, & the waight of an halfpenny of Safron, with halfe a sponesfull of Barlie flower, the which yet stampe a little together agayne, and then laye it in a fine thynne double linnen cloth, and applie it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chyld to drynke a little of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnleeppnesse come of the impuritie of the Purles mylke (as many tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of Violettes, and put vnto it a litle quantitie of wineger, and of this licour drop oftentimes into the chyldes noethyilles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, & temper it with the succ of Lettuse, and therewith annoynt the head and the stomache of the chyld, & farther, see that the Purles mylke may be amended.

The first booke.

Agaynst yeryng oꝝ the hychat.

This yeryng commeth eyther of coldnesse of the stomache, other els of ouermuche fulnesse, oꝝ foꝝ lacke of meate & emptines of the stomache, oꝝ els by some hot and colerike qualitie bytyng vpon the mouth of the stomache.

As often as it commeth by the aboundaunce of meate and fulnesse, the remedie is to prouoke it to vomite. If by coldnesse of the stomache, then annoynt the stomache with the oyle of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the stomache a plaster made of the seede of Bil, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Myntes.

But yf it chaunce by anye heate oꝝ coleryke qualitie, then take the oyle of violetttes, oꝝ of Roses, the iuyce of Endiue, oꝝ of any other suche hearbes, the whiche haue power to infrigdate and coole, and temper the same with womans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyldes stomache.

And when it proceedeth by defecte and lacke of meate oꝝ emptines of the stomache, then geue to the chyld to feede bypon mylke, and other good holsome thynges to suppe, neyther passe not greatly though the chylde relecte and vomite by agayne that the whiche it receyueth, foꝝ so muche ener wyll remayne in the stomache that shalbe sufficient to sustayne it, and meanely to nourishe it.

Agaynst

Agaynst often parbreakeing by weakenesse and
feble nesse of the stomacke.



Gainst ouermuch parbreakeing, beat
foure graines of Cloues, and geue it
to the childe to drynke, with foure oz
foure spoonesfulles of red wine.

Item, take of Mastike, whyte
frankencense, and the leaues of the redde Rose,
so muche as shalbe sufficient, and al these beatey
together, temper them with the iuyce of Myn-
tes, & make a plaster of it, laying it to the childes
stomacke. But yf the childes vomityng be very
behemient, then put vnto these foresayde thinges
a quantitie of Rose vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it so hotte in
an ouen, or els in a fryng panne ouer the fyre,
tyl it waxe browne, then beate it to powder a-
gayne, putting it into vineger, and to these adde
the yolke of an egge hard rosted, Mastike, fran-
kencense, and Gumme Arabike, and temper all
these with the iuyce of Myntes, makynge of it a
plaster, the whiche lay to the chyldes stomacke,
and to the childes mouth and nose hold a warme
tosse of bread.

Causes of this yll be three. The fyrste, yf the
chylde haue taken moze mylke then it is able to
concocte and digest. The seconde, yf the Nur-
ses mylke be ouerthynne, wateryshe, and fluthe.
The thyrde, yf the same mylke be impure, fe-
culent, and corrupte. These causes prouoke no-
misse, and speciall ye yf the chylde also haue a

The chyldre booke.

weake and waterishe stomache: wherfore ye must helpe the Infant after this maner.

First let the chyld sucke lesse then it did before, and then also marke that which the chyld doeth perbrake, whether is sauer sharplye like Vineger, and that it be whytishe: for if it be so, then take of whyle Frankensence, bill. graynes, of dyed Rue. xx. graynes: beate these to powder, and geue it to the chyld to drinke with the syrope of red Roses.

Orels let the Nurse cha'we Cummin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chyld.

Take Mastiche, Accatia, Xilooloes, Galles, whyle Frankensence, tosted bread, of eche lyke muche, beate them together, puttyng to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conserue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

But if it to be that the perbraking of the chyld sauer not after the fashion of Vineger, but after some other sorte sauer, and that it be not whytishe, but pale or yelowishe: then geue it the suyce of Quinces, and lay this plaster vnto the chyldes stomache. Take Barlye meale, wylde Mulberies, and Plidium, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomache be somewhat waterishe, and slowe in digestion, then annopnt it with the water of Roses, in the whiche Muske hath ben dissolved, orels the

water

1 Take of the Apothecary mishonion 9 1 m

2 Rhubarb prepared 9 1 m

3 Conserua poppanth 9 1 m

4 Sheep the mishonion att night in a vessel, being first y washed into a draught of

Samt, stop it close, the next morning drink it off. Then take a new ewe, fasting with halfe a

spoonfull of sugar, shake it up with the rest before you drink it.

The next morning before you drink it, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

And if the chyld be weake, add a spoonfull of sugar.

water of Mirtylles, and geue it to drynke the
iuyce of Quinces, with a litle Cloues and Su-
ger, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith
tempered and myxed.

¶ Agaynst feareful and terrible dreames.

Also sometime the chylde be vexed and
vniquieted with feareful and terrible dre-
mes in theyr sleepe, whiche thyng for the
most part commeth of the abundaunce of foode,
and ouermuche meate or drynkes, which for the
copie and superfluitie thereof, can not be conuict
ne overcome of nature, wherefore necessarily it
putrifieth and corrupteth: the noysome and hy-
dious vapours whereof, styng by to the head in
time of sleepe, cause these terrible fantasies in the
sleepe. And thus may it be remedied. fyrst take
heede that ye lay not the childe to sleepe straght
after it hath fed, and also let it lycke a litle honye,
swallowyng it downe, so that by it, such things
the which be some what harde to digest and con-
coct, may the sooner be digested, and the refuse
the more easly to descende into the guttes.

Item, euery day geue to the infant halfe a dram
of the electuarie called Diamuscum, or Diaplicis.
Also triacle in this case is very good, taken with
mylke, as sayth Rasis.

¶ Against issuing forth of the fundament gut.

For the issuyng forth of this gutte, when
the childe labourerh to ease it selfe: Take
Mirtylles, Acorne cuppes, red Roses dried,
burnt

The thyrde booke.

burnt Hartes hornes, burnt Allome, Goates hooft, Balauftium, and Galles, of eche like much, and fethe al thefe together with water, fo long tyll the water haue receiued the ftrengh of the ingredience, and with this water beyng warme, walhe the gut, and fo conuey it into the bodye a gayne, as I taught you in the feconde booke.

Agaynst Enafmus.



Enafmus is a difeafe when the child enforceth it felf to the ftooke, and yet can do nothyng, the whiche thing oftentimes chaunceth to chyldren, moft commonly proceeding of colde. Agaynst the whiche, ye fhall vse thefe remedies. Take Garden Crefles and Cummin feede, of eche lyke muche, beate them together, and temper them with old butter, and gyue it the chyld to drynke with colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, and lay it byon coales, whole fume let the chyld receaue beneath in the fundement, the fume beyng inclofed rounde about with clothes.

Item, take Tarre, and lyke wyfe make fume of it, receiuyng the fume as before.

Agaynst woormes in the belly.

Sometymes there breede woormes in the guttes, of the bygnelle and quantitie of fuche as are wonte to be in olde Cheefe, called Mytes, and fome lyke lyce. And sometyme in the belly be engendred woormes of the bygnelle

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxb

nesse of earth woormes, called Cases. Agaynst these vse this remedy. Take the water of Centū nodia, and geue it to the chyld to drynke with mylke.

Item, take of whyte Cozall, the scraping of Juory, of Hartes horne burnt, and of Treos, of eche a scruple, of Sugar candie one ounce and an halfe, of the water of Centumnodia, so much as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, and of this make suppositaries, ministring to the chyld every day the waight of two drammes.

Other wyse accordyng to Rasis minde: Take of Commyn seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Ore gall, makyng thereof a plaster, the whiche ye shall lay to the Infantes Hauell.

Item, oyle Olive taken and drunken a small quantitie thereof, is very good to kyll all maner of woormes whiche breede in the gutte, neere to the fundement. Take the finest cotten, & thereof make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoyne with the oyle of woormeewood, or of Rue, or of the hymelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almondes, and so to conuey it into the chyldes syttyng place.

Item, it shall greatly profyte the chyld, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is sodden woormeewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oymtente for the same. Take of woormeewood, & of Lupines, of ech two drams, of Siler

The thirde booke.

Siler montanum, Cōmin, Cockle, Centoſe, and Centonicum, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, all theſe thinges beaten together, temper them in the oyle of wormewood, or of hytter Almonds the wayght of two ounces, puttynge to it foure drammes wayght of ware, and make hereof an oyntment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fire, or in ſome warme place.

Item, take of Cockle two drammes, of wormewood and Maſtiche, of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Cozall, of eche two drammes, of Coriander preparat, ſixe drammes, beate all theſe wel together. Adde alſo to theſe, of Rye meale three ounces, of Lupines beate to powder, ſixe drammes, of Saſſron two drams, temper all theſe in two ounces of the ſuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the ſuyce of wormewood, or of the oyle of the ſame, and make hereof a plaſter, and lay it vnto the chyldes ſhauel the breadth of a hande.

Item, geue the chyld the wayght of foure pence of the powder of Aloes cicotrine, with faire water fyrſt ſodden and ſweeted with Sugar, or els with ſingle beare, and this no doubt is ſoueraigne.

Item, agaynſt the great and long wormes. Take of the ſuyce of wormewood, & of Ore gal, of both two ounces, of Colocinthiſ. liiii. drammes, temper all theſe well together, adding to it a little wheaten meale, and make hereof a plaſter, the whiche laye to the ſhauell of the chyld.

Item,

The thyrd booke. Fol. Cxvi.

Item a bathe for the same.

Take mozemwood, and Gaulles, and see the them in water, and let the chyld be bathed in it by to the Mayll.

Of chaufing or gallyng in any place of the body.

Against gallyng or chaufyng of the chyldes skynne, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpenes of brine or sweate: Take Mirtils, and beate them to powder, and strewe thereof on the place. Item, take of Irios, of the red Rose, of Cypus, of Tragacantum, so much as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, and strewe of the powder on the chaufed places.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte frankencense one dramme, and mele these together, and then take epght graynes of Camphire dissolued in Rose water, and myxt therewithall, and of all this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall. Also Vnguentum album, and Vnguentum rubrum be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and somentation with the water wherein Plantane, knot grasse, docke rootes, or Bursa pastoris is sodden, is very good for the same.

Of the fallyng sicknesse.

Sometymes these Infantes be bered and encumbred with the fallyng syckenesse, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that it

The thynde booke.

it hath this disease straght forth with the
byrth: Cause of the which, is colde and yll hu-
mours in the head and braynes. Another is,
that it taketh this infirmittie after the byrth by
some accidentall causes, in which case, yf it
leauue not the chyld, being a manchylde, before
he be .xv. yerres of age, and the woman chyld
about the tyme of hauyng her fyrste flowres, yf
it forsake them not in this space, neyther by the
myght of nature, nether of medicines, then is
it lyke neuer to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this disease come not by nature,
but by some accidentall cause afterwarde, then
geue diligent heede that the Nurles mylke be
very good, and conuenient to the chyldes nature.
And for the same purpose yf necessitie require,
it shalbe verve good to purge and cleanse the
Nurles body with due and meate medicines;
and she must auoyde all such thynges the which
do coole and moysten, and do suffer the chyld to
receyue no more mylke at once, then it may be
able well to digest.

Agaynst this cruell disease, auchours muche
commende the roote of a Pionie, only hanged a-
bout the chyldes necke.

Item, the same roote dried and beaten to pow-
der, and so oftentimes geuen to the chld to take;
sometymes with dzynte, sometymes with po-
tage, pap, or mylke, or any other wayes. Lyke-
wyle the seede of Pionie is very good.

Furthermore, powre nowe and then into the
chyldes nolethyls of oyle of Castorium, or y oyle
of

Take salted oyle half a pint, and leud 2 ounces, virgins may luffe them
a walnut, coole it on a soft fire till it begin to be blacke
that is, beel, aunciently pruned it to powder, a woman þen burned þe same in powder
with beens oyle, yf she it with ale or mylke.

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxviij.

of Costus, or of Euforbium : Also let the chyld
smell to Rue and to Asa fetida

Item, to hang Viscum quersimū, which is gathered in Marche, the moone decreasyng, about the chyldes necke, is very good. Diuers other thynges there be whiche myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this tyme.

Consumption or prynnyng away of the bodye.



When the Infant falleth away, and the fleshe rebateth, remaynyng nothing but as it were skin and bone, and thereby the chyld wareth sycklye : Then let the Infant be often bathed in water, in whiche hath ben sodden the head and the feete of a weathre, so long tyll the fleshe part from the bones of his owne accorde, and every tyme that the chyld commeth forth of the bath, first let it be wiped and dyled cleane, and then annoynt it with this oyntment.

Take freshe Butter, oyle of Violetes, & oyle of Roses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freshe Porker halfe an ounce, of white waxe two drammes, melt all these thynges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoyntyng therewith the chyldes bodye.

Item, take white waxe, Swines grease, sheepes tallowe, freshe Butter, melte all these thynges together, and strayne them, makynge of it an oyntment, and annoynt the chyld withall once or twyle euerye day. But the cheefe hope
of

The thyꝛde booke.

of restauration must be in light, restozatyue, and pure nourishing meates.

C Of lassitude, weerynesse, oz heauinesse
of the chyldes body.

Sometymes it chaunceth that the chyldes members of the body be so feeble, as though it had the paulsie, so that with that partes of the bodye, the chyld can not helpe it selfe, neyther can it lyft by the hands, armes, ne stand on the feete. If the chyld haue this disease whylest it sucketh, then let the Nurse be comforted, and strengthened with suche thynges the whiche haue vertue to heate and to dnye. Also let the Nurse feede onely vpon rosted and fried meates, and that she forbear from mylke, fysh, and harde oz salt powdred fleshe, for commonlye this disease spryngeth of colde and moyse humours, besieging the sinewes.

Furthermoze, let not the Nurse vse any watered wine, oz mixed, but mere and in his owne kynde, and let her bathe the chyld euer before she geue it sucke, after annoyntyng it with the oyle of Castorium, oz the oyle of Castum, and let the chyld drinke euery day a quantitie of this electuarie folowynge.

Take Garden Mint, Cinamome, Cōmin, dry Roses, Masticke, Fenugreke, Valerian, Amios, Doronicum, Zedoarium, Cloues, Saunders, Xilaloes, of eche a dram, of Muske halfe a dram, beate all those to powder, and confict them with clarified and depured Honye, make thereof an electuarie,

The third booke. Fol. Cxviij.

electuarie, of the which euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to drynke with whyte wine. If the chylde haue this diseale in euery parte of his body, then take an ounce of ware, and a dram of Euforbium, the whiche Euforbium ye shall beate in a morter with. v. or vi. dropes of oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fire, adding ther vnto so much oyle as may be sufficient to make a searecloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

¶ Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsey.

If the chylde happen to be bered with trembling or shaking of the body, or the parts thereof, so that ye feare the palsey of the same parte, or that the falling sicknesse shoulde ensue: then remedle it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spykenarde, and temper them togeather, warming it, and therewith annoynt the backe or raynes, and the other shakynge members: ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bathe the chylde in the decoction of Rosemary, Sage, Tyme, Hyssope, Sauery, Alexander, Smallage, &c. is very soueraigne.

If you can not cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counsaile of the phisitions.

The thirde booke.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stopping
of the bryne.

Strangury, Disflury, and the difficultie in
making of water, oftentimes chaunceth
to chylzen by reason of the stone, or aboun-
dauce of gravel, other els many tymes of some
other viscouis, slimye, and flegmatike matter, in
maner & fourme of dreggs or ragges ouerwhar-
ting and crossing the passage, whereby the brine
shoulde passe forth, in suche wyse, that (without
great paine) the chylde can not make his water,
and that yet but in small quantitie at once.

Whiche of these wayes so euer it come, it shal-
be herve good to bathe the chylde by to the Na-
upill in the decoction of Peritorie of the wall,
Mallowes, Holoche, Lyneseede, Lillie rootes,
fenegreke, and Sauery, other els with a spung
or double linnen cloth dypped therein, estones
to foment the share and neather part of the belly
agaynst the bladder.

But in men chylzen cheefely foment them
on the straighetes, betweene the fundement and
the coddess, the whiche place in Latine is called
Perineum, for there in them lieth the necke of the
bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation,
dry the places fomented, and whilest they be yet
red with bathyng, annoynt them with the oyle
of scorpions, to be had at the Apothecaries, or els
the oyle called Petroleum.

And yf further neede shall require it, ye may
applye

applie this plaster folowynge to the foresayd places. Take of Parseley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handfull, of Peritorie, Wallowes, Dolyoke rootes, of eche an handfull, seethe these hearbes togeather in good stale ale, tyl such tyme as they be soft, then powre out the ale fro them, and stampe the hearbes in a stone mortar, adding thereunto of the seedes of fenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item, of Cummin seede the weight of foure grotes, beaten lyke wyse to fyne powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, Petroleum, or other appertiffe oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these wel commixed togeather, make a plaster, and lay to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administrated in wardes, it is but folly, for so muche as it is so harde to cause a chyld to take any thyng within foorth.

This difficultie in makynge water, may ensue by other meanes, whereof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

¶ Of goggle eyes, or loking a squint.

If the chyld haue goggle eyes, or that it looke a squint, then fyrst sette the cradell in suche a place, that the lyght maye come directly and ryght in the chyldes face, neither in the one syde, neyther in the other, neyther aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on whiche syde that the eyes do goggle, and let the lyghte come vnto it on the

The thyrde booke.

contrary syde, so to returne the syght. And in the nyght season sette a candell on the contrary syde, so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place. And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of diuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, and specially of the colour of light greene, or yelow, for the chyld shall haue pleasure to behold these straunge colours. And in returnyng the eye sight towarde such thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, of the diseases of chyldren after they be bozne, making here an ende of this thirde booke, for this tyme.

Of such things the which shalbe en-
treated of in this fourth booke.

Chap. i.

Here in this fourth booke
(by the leaue of God) shal
brieffly be declared suche
thinges whiche may far-
ther or hinder the concep-
tion of man, whiche as it may be by
dyuers meanes letted and hyndered, so
also by many other wayes, it maye be
farthered and amended. Also to know
by certayne signes and tokens, whe-
ther the woman be conceived or no,
and whether the conception be male or
female, and finally certayne remedies
and medicines to farther and helpe
conception, and thereafter we wyl (ac-
cording to our promise in the prologe)
set forth certayne bellifying receiptes, &
so make an ende of this whole treatise.

Summe **O**f

The fourth booke.

Of conception, and how many wayes it may
be hindred or letted. Chap. ii.



Here is nothing vnder heauen,
which so manyfest and playnely
dooth declare and shewe the
magnificent myghtynesse of the
omnipotent Iuyng **G O D**, as
dooth the perpetuall and con-
tinuall generation and conception of Iuyng
things here in earth, by the which is saued,
prologed, and augmented the kynde of all thin-
ges. And where that this almyghtie Lorde
and creature hath so institute and ordained, that
no singuler thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth)
should continually remaine and abide: yet hath
he geue from the beginning and instinced such
apower and vertue vnto these mortal creatures,
that they may engender and produce other like
things vnto them selfe, and vnto their owne
similitude, in the which alway is saued the seede
of posteritie. were not this prouision had by al-
myghtie **G O D**, the nature and kinde of all maner
of things woulde soone perishe and come to an
ende, the which vertue and power of generation
many times doth halte and misse, by defect and
the contrary disposition in the partes generant:

As ye maye euidentlye see in the sowynge of
come and al other maner of seede. So that there
be in all maner of generation three principall
partes concurrent to the same, the sower, the
seede sower, and the receptacle or place recea-
uyng

tyng and contaynyng the seede. If there be faulte in anye of these three, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto suche tyme as the fault be remoued, or amended.

The earth vnto all seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contaynyng, clippng and embracing them in her wombe, feedyng and fostering them as the Mother doth the chylde in her bellye or Matris, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto their nature and kinde: But yf this seede concealed in the bowles of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer waterishe, dankishe, or ouer hot and drye, or els full of stones, grauell, or other rubbishe, or full of yll weedes, whiche may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng: also the seede may be putrified, or otherwyle viciate and corrupted, and so the lyfe and spirite of it banysht away and destroyed. The sower may vnoordnately strewe and cast the seede on the earth, &c. So that yf there be lette in none of these partes concurrant to generation, or that the lettes be remoued and doone awaye, then doubtesse wyll ensue multiplicati- on and encrease ment of that kynde, of the whiche the seede commeth, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almyghtie God hath enplanted and sette in the kynde of all thynges.

The fourth booke.

CHowe many wayes conception may be letted,
and howe the causes may be knowen.

Capit. iiii.

Euerie thyng then, the whiche doth increase
in this kinde, must fyrst be conceiued in the
wombe and matrix of the mother, whiche is
apte and conuenient for the receypte of such seede.
And (as I sayd before) as there may be defect and
lacke in the mother receyving the seede, so may
there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the
seede it selfe also.

7 And in women there may be foure generall
causes, by the whiche the conception may be
impedite and let: ouermuche caliditie or heate
of the matrix, ouermuche coldnesse, ouermuche
humiditie or moystnesse, and ouermuch drynesse.
Anye of these foure qualitties exceeding temper-
rancie, may be sufficient causes to let due concep-
tion.

Wherfore the right excellent Philisition Hippo-
crates in the fyfth booke of his Amphorismes
saith, All such women the whiche haue colde and
dense matrixes can not conceaue, and such as
haue moyst and watery the matrixes can not con-
ceauie, for the power of the seede is extinguished
in it: also hauyng drye matrixes, conceaue not,
for the seede perisheth for lacke of due nutriment
and foode: but that matrix the whiche hath all
these qualitties in temperancie, that is fruiteful.
This is Hipocrates saying, the whiche thyng
also

The fourth booke. Fol.cxxii.

also may be well perceived by a famillier example of the sowynge of cozne.

For if it be sowed in ouer colde places, suche as be in the partes of a countrey called Sitchia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall snowe, or frosse, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowed, wyll neuer come to prooffe, nor fructifie, but through the vehement coldnesse of the place, in the whiche it is conceaued, the lyfe and quickenesse of the grayne is bitterly destroyed and adnihilated.

And further, as concerning ouermuche humiditye, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or maryshe and watery ground, the seede wyll peryshe thorow the ouermuch abundance of water, which extinguisbeth the liuelinesse and the natural power of the grayne and seede.

Likewise yf it be sowed in suche a countrey or place where is ouergreat heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yeere be so drye, that there come no rayne at all to alaye the extreme and feruent heate of the sunne: then shall the seede sowed, wyther and drye away, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

And if it be sowed in drye places, where neuer commeth rayne, or on the sand and grauely places, in suche a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceiued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

Wherefore, yf the Matrix be distempered, by
the

The fourth booke.

the excelle of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it againe to temperauncie, by such remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man: as yf the seede be ouer hotte, the which the woman shall feele as it were burnyng hot, or to cold, the which she shall feele as it were in maner colde as yse, or to fluye or thinne. &c. Butuers other wayes also it may be letted, which shall not neede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceaue, the cause comyng of ouermuch frigiditie or coldnesse in the Matrix, that shall she know by these tokens. She shall feele great colde about the sides, the raynes of the backe, and the Matrix, her brine shal appeare whyte and thinnishe, and sometymes also somewhat spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thynges shall noy her, hotte thynges shall greatly comfort her.

But yf it come by ouermuche humiditie of the Matrix, that shal she knowe by these sygnes. If the bodye of her be of a fat & grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue forth at the begynnyng and the latter ende of them, certayne viscus and watery substaunce, and that her brine be white, thicke, and sometyme as it were mylke: Also that she feele great colde and payne about the matrix and priuite partes, and much dolour in her sides and in the raynes of her backe.

And when ouermuche heate or dryth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception, then is the brine hye coloured, redde, or yelowe,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxij.

lowe, beyng thynne, with certayne moles appearing in the water : the woman hath great thyrst, and bytter rysing or belchynges out of the stomacke into the mouth, And many tymes they that are in this case, are very spare and leane in all their bodie, hauing also but small quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng may happen eyther by ouer muche watche, or ouer much fastyng, labour, trauaile, sorowe, sicknesse, &c. But suche women whiche naturally are thus spare and leane, may very hardlye be brought to a temperance agayne, and be made apt to conceaue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his excellence causeth sterilitie. Nowe wyl we shew how it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, or els in the man, and how to knowe whether the woman be conceaued or no, accordyng to the mynde of ryght expert Physicians.

How to knowe Whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceiued whether she be conceiued or no. Chap. iiii.

If ye be desirous to know whether the man or the woman be hinderance in conception : Let eche of them take of
weeste

The fourth booke.

*W*heate and Barly cornes, and of Beanes, of
eche. viii. the whiche they shall suffer to be steeped
in their severall brnye the space of twentie and
foure houres: then take two pottes, such as they
set Celistowes in, fill them with good earth, &
in the one let be sette the wheate, Barly, and
Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the
other the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped
in the womans water, and every moynyng the
space of. viii. or. x. dayes, let eche of them with
theyr proper brnye water the sayd seedes sowen
in the foresayde pottes: and marke whose potte
doth proue, and the seedes therein conceived
doth growe, in that partie is not the lacke of
conception, and see that there come no other
water or rayne on the pots: but trust not muche
this farre set experiment.

*I*tem, accordyng to Hipocrates wytyng, yf ye
wyl know whether the faulte be in the woman
or no, then let the woman receyue into her body
bnderneath, beyng well and closely closed round
about, the fume of some odouriferous perfume, as
Laudanum, Storax calamite, Lignum Aloes,
Muske, Ambre, and such other, and yf the adour
and sauoure of such thinges ascende thoww her
body by vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande that
sterilitie commeth not of the womans parte: yf
not, then is the defect in her.

*I*tem, yf ye take Garliche, beyng pilled out
of the huskes, and conuaye of it into the priuie
partes, and yf the sent of it ascende bype tho-
rowe the bodie vnto the nose, the woman is
faultlesse,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxliii.

faultlesse: yf not, then is there lacke in her. These tokens, although they haue a certayne reason and appearaunce, yet be they not alwayes infallible, but onely likely.

Whether she be conceaued alredy or no, ye shall knowe by these signes. First the flowres issue not in so great quantittie as they are wont, but waxe lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Also the brestes begin to waxe rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be: the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwyle then she was vled to do before that tyme, also her bryn wareth spythe and thychthe by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feelet her Haire very fastly and closely shutte, insomuche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynt of an needle may scale enter.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceaued or noe, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the. b. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantittie of Mellicraturum to drynke, and yf after that drynke she feeles great payne, gnawynge, and tumblyng in her bellye, then be ye sure that she is conceaued. This Mellicraturum is a drynke, made of one part wine, another part water, sodden together, with a quantittie of hony.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bygght knyfe, other els on the nayle of

To knowe
whether the
woman be
conceaued,
or no.

2

3

4


5

The fourth booke.

of one of her fyngers, and yf the mylke flewe and
spred abroad vpon it by and by, then is it a wo-
man chyld: but yf the drop of Mylke continie
and stande styll vpon that the which it is mylked
on then is it a signe of a man chyld.

Item, if it be a male, then shal the woman with
chylde be well colozed, and lyght in goyng, her
belly rounde, bigger toward the right side, then
the left (for commonly the man chyld lyeth in
the ryght syde, the woman in the left side) and in
the tyme of her bearyng she shal better digest and
lyke her meate, her stomache nothyng so quesyne
ne feble.

Of certayne remedies and medicines which
may further the woman to con-
ceau. Cap. v.

 A sterilitie then for the mosse
part ensueth and commeth of
the distemperauncie of one of
these foure sozenamed qualittes,
wherefore the remedie and cure
of the same when it chaunceth,
musse be done by suche thynges the which haue
contrary power & operation to the excessive qua-
littie, for by that shall it be reduced to his tempe-
rauncie agayne.

As yf that coldnesse and moystnesse excedyng
temperancie in the Matrix be occasion of steri-
littie, then musse she applie suche thynges to that
place the whiche be of nature hote and drye, the
whiche may calisse and warme the place, and al-
so drye by the yll moystnes and humours contey-
ned

The fourth booke. Fol.Cxxb.

ned in the same, hinderyng conception.

And for because that the mosse generall and common cause of sterilitie doth proceede of colde, waterishe, and flegmatike humours, whiche bedea wyng the inner sydes and holonesse of the Matrix, with the porte and mouth thereof also, causeth that the seede sent from the man into the womans wombe or Matrix, can not there remaine ne cleaue: neyther is the mouth or port of the wombe apte or able to close it selfe sufficiently after reception of the seede, the flewme and slimie humours withstandyng it, the which knlesse they be discused, or dyed away, the seede alway slippeth and slideth soorth as fast as it entereth in.

Wherfore to remedie and to do away the fore sayde impediment, ye shall vse the meanes whiche foloweth.

Firste, within a day or two after the womans Termes be passed, let her by the aduyce of some Physitian take a purgation, which may purge flewme and wateryshenes, and then the next or the thyrde day after, let her sit in a bath by almoste to the Hauell, in the whiche bath ye shall decocte and seethe these hearbes folowyng. Take of Bay leaues, Mallowes, redde Mintes, Virtilles, Camomel, Moloanam, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage thre handfulles, of Mercurie and Brankursin of eche two handfulles, seethe all these hearbes togeather in sayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water, and the other halfe redde
w ne,

The fourth booke.

wine, in this bath let her remayne the space of a good halfe houre, and a litle before that she come forth of the bath, geue her to drynke of this electuarie folowynge.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Galingall, Cinanome, and long pepper, of eche the wayght of a grote, of Annis seede the wayght of two grotes, of Sage leaues dyled, the wayght of thre grotes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small powder, temper them altogether in so much pure clarified Honye, as maye be sufficient to receyue all the powder, other els commixt with this powder so muche fine Suger, as the wayght of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the wayght of two grotes, with. viii. ix. oz. x. sponesfulles of good whyte oz claret wine, other els with good Maluesey oz Muscadell.

And all this muste be done eyther fastyng in the mornyng one houre before breakfast, oz dyner, other els. v. oz. vi. houres after dyner, so that it be not done vppon a full stomache. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornyng, then at nyght thre oz foure houres after supper, let her receyue vnderneath her clothes, the vapour of these thynges folowynge into the priuite. Take of Lauender dyled, of vnset Tymē, Bay berries, Iuie leaues, of eche halfe a litle handfull, of whyte frankincense the wayght of foure grotes, of Sage dyled, oz other two litle handfulls of Rosemary leaues

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvi.

leaves one handfull, see the these together in
saye water, and when they be perfectly sodden,
then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour
thereof, sitting grouelyng, other els set on a co-
ner made for the nonce with a tunnell or condu-
ite, thozowe the which the vapour may be direc-
ted into the womans priue passage, the neere
thereby, that the vertue therof may approche vnto
to the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyppe wooll,
or els fyne linnen cloutes, and so conuay it in-
to the priue passage, there to remayne the space
of one or two houres. This bath, electuarie,
and vapour, I counsell them that haue neede, to
vse them the space of thre dayes continuallye,
and then, the thyrde nyght to companie with
her husbände, and by the grace of **GOD** thre
shalbe spedde. There be sometymes, that with
the vse of the bath onely or the electuarie alone,
eyther the vapour, without any farther reme-
die haue been aptified to conception, but who
that bleth it as is aboue mentioned, worketh the
surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of
conception, proceeding of colde, moyste, and
flegmatike humidities. Nowe yf it come by
any dissemperance in heate and dryeth: then
let her be purged of collicke, or other vnkynde heate
bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for
that purpose, and then after ward to vse bathes,
electuaries, and vapours, of moderately cooling
thynges, as of Roses, violettes, Lettuse, Purs-
layne,

The fourth booke.

layne, Plantayne, and diuers other.

But forasmuche that most commonly the br-
apitude of conception (in women hauyng their
health) spryngeth of the superfluitie of colde and
moyst humours (whereof we haue alredy spo-
ken) therefore all other impedimentes leste a-
parte, ye shall holde ye content with this for this
tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all
the occasions whereby conception may be let
or impedit, then shoulde I here alleage and
bryng in all the diseases that may happen to a
woman in that partes, with the remedies there-
of, whiche were a long worke, and not proper
for this volume.

In this. vi. Chapter is entreated of diuers bel-
lisyng receptes, as ye may here.
after reade.

The Embellishing or bellysying me-
dicines whereof I entende to speake
here, be not to be vnderstanden to
be of that sort, whereby any Adisti-
cious or outwarde forraine beautie
or set colours shoulde be acquired or gotten, the
whiche farre fet a damnable curiositie, I doubt
not but that all honest and vertuous sadde wo-
men doo vtterly abhorre and contemne: but
here mine onely meaning is, to shewe how to re-
moue certayne blemyshe, and as it were weedes
of the bodye, through the whiche many tymes
the naturall beautie thereof is obscured and de-
faced. For as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer so
beauti-

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvii.

beautiful, yet yf it be not regarded and looked vnto, the weedes entermynglyng them selues among the good hearbes, will defourme and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well diligented and pyked, yet alwayes therein wil remayne some sparkes and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whiche euer when tyme or season serueth, nature thrusteth forth.

Lykewyle in the bodye of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualitie of yll and not necessary humours, with the whiche nature beyng offended and cloyed, expelleth and driueth them forth sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, accordyng to the aptitude or feeblenesse in resistance of the place receiuyng it, and the force or violence of nature (therewith greued) sendyng it, so that the superfluities founde in the hypper part and face or superficte of the skinne, ensueth by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke matter conteyned and commixed in the baynes among the blood, and is a great euidence and testimonie thereof. But here I wyl not speake of all kyndes of vtter diseases spryngyng of this inwarde corrupted humours, but onely of suche thynges as commonly chaunce to men and women without any imperysment of their health.

As for example, fyrste I wyl breefely declare the sythynesse of the head, called in latin Perrigo,

The fourth booke.

in Englyshe, the Dandruffe of the head, the whyche is, when that in kembing and cratchyng of the head, certayne whyte shales, as it were bzanne, falleth of from the head, and lyeth verpe thicke among and vnder the heare.

C Of the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

THE cause of this Dandruffe commeth by abundance of fleumatike humours, commyxt with the blood, the which daylye and hourelly by incessable sweatyng, euaporateth and issueth forth of the pores, in the skynne that couereth the panbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dyeth on the vtter superficie of the skynne, and there remaynyng and geatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helping the forrest of heare which couereth, harboureth, and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no heare groweth. And most commonlye they that haue blacke heare haue more store of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffered ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the heares, makyng them to fall of in great plentie, and especiallye in kembyng. And although this superfluitie be not cleanlye, yet notwithstanding it shalbe no wyledome for me to teache, ne anye other herewith encumbred to learne, howe to stoppe it, for feare of further inconueniences, but onlye I coulde sell you once in tenne dayes at the least, to washe

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxviii.

Washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye, wherein let be steeped in a linnen bagge of Annis seede, Commin, dyed Rosemarie, Fenugreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke muche: a beware that after the washyng of your head ye take no colde, befoze the head be perfectly dyed.

And whereas some say, that they whiche bse ofte washyng of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in such that after they haue been washed, roll by theyr heare (beyng yet wette) about theyr heades, the colde whereof is daungerous to bryng them to Catarrhes and poses, with other inconuenienc^{es}. Wherefoze all diligence muste be had, that the head may be exactly well dyed with warme clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washyng, and then neuer feare no inconuenienc^{es}, but rather conuenance and commoditie: and let this be done also fastyng in the mornyng, or els one houre befoze supper, or. v. houres after supper: this ofte washyng shall purgfy the shyne of the head, and stedfaste the heare from fallyng, leuate and lyghten the head, with all the senses therein conteyned, and greatlye comfort the braynes.

To take awaye heares from places where
it is vnseemely.

Item, sometymes heare groweth in places vnseemely, and out of order: as in many maydens and women the heare groweth so lowe

The fourth booke.

1 in the foreheades and the temples, that it diffi-
gureth them: for this ye maye vse three wayes
to remoue them, eyther to plucke bp one after a-
nother with pincers, such as many women haue
for the nonce, eyther els with this lye folowynge.

2 Take newe burnt Lime foure ounces, of Arse-
necke an ounce, steepe both these in a pynt of wa-
ter the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from
a pynt to the halfe.

And to proue whether it be perfect, dyppe a
feather therein, and yf the plume of the feather
depart of easly, then is it strong enough: with
this water then annoynt so farre the place that
ye woulde haue bare from heare, as it lyeth
you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke
at the heares, and they wyl folowe, and then
washe that place muche with water wherein
branne hath ben steeped: and that done, annoynt
the place with the whyre of a newe layde egge
and oyle Olive, beaten and mixt togeather with
the iuyce of Singrene or Purslane, to alaye
the heate engendered of the foresayde lye. The
thyrd way to remoue heare, is with a plaster
3 made of bevy dyed pitch, and hypon leather ap-
plied to the place, the heares being fyrste sha-
uen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of
Cylers.

Nowe when the heares be bp by the rootes,
then to let them that they growe no more: take
of Aloome the wayght of a groate, and dissolue it
in two spoonefulls of the iuyce of Bryghshade,
or of Penbane, and therewithall annoynt the
place

The fourth booke. Fol.Cxxix.

place two or three tymes every day, the space of
ix. or .x. dayes, and heare wyll growe no more in
that place.

¶ To do away freckens, or other spottes
in the face.

THese freckens and such other spottes in the
face, or other where in the bodye, may be
taken away by often annoyntyng them
with the oyle of Carter, to be founde alwayes at
the Apothecaries, and surely that oyle is soue-
raigne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce
in halfe a pint of strong white Vineger, til halfe
be consumed, then mixt therewith Honey.iii. spon-
fulles, and the weight of a peny of Mercury sub-
limid (to be had at the Apothecaries) seeth these
together agayne tyl it become thicke: with this
annoynt the freckens, and it wyl destroy them.
This is also very good for the Morphewe, and
other discolouration or staynyng of the skinne.

¶ To destroy wartes, and suche lyke, excres-
cences on the face or els where.

FOR this purpose nothyng is so excellent,
as every day once, the space of three or foure
dayes, to drop one drop of strong water, cal-
led Aqua fortis, on them, for this destroyeth them
in very short tyme.

Item, the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce
of Marygoldes is very good for the same.

Item, dissolve a litle Mercury sublimid in
fayre water, and therewith drop the wartes, and
they

head
Take this to
not this

The fourth booke.

they wyll soone wyther and consume away.

Co cleare and clarifie the skin in the hands,
face, or other part of the body.

For this is nothing better then to take one
spoonefull of the oyle of **C**arter, and syxe
spoonefulles of water, with these commixed
together, washe the handes, face, and other par-
tes, for it scoureth, cleanseth, and puriffeth the
skynne soueraignely, and wil suffer no filthynesse
to remaine in the pores of the flesh, and this oyle
of **C**arter is made on this wyle.

Take wine lyes dried, the which the **G**olde-
smithes do cal **A**rguyl, and beate it into pow-
der, and then fyll thereof a **G**oldsmithes crudy-
ble, and set it among hotte coales, tyll the **A**r-
guyl begyn to waxe blacke, then take it out of
the fyre, and let it coole, and bynde it in a linnen
cloute, and hang it a litle ouer the vapour of
hotte boyleng water: that done, hang this clout
with the **A**rguyl in a glasse with a brode mouth,
so that the bagge or clout touch not the bottome
of the glasse, and the water or oyle called **C**arter
wil drop downe a lytle and lytle: and the sooner,
yf it stande in, a very colde and moyst cellar.

Item, to scoure the handes and the body, some
use to washe theyr handes with the powder of
Dresse, whiche is the roote of the blew flower-
deluce, and some with **B**eane flowre.

Item, the yolke and white of egges is good
for that purpose, and so is hony,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxx.

C To souple and mollifie the ruggednesse
of the skynne.

Annoynt the skin with the oyle of sweete Al-
mondcs, the same is very good also for chip-
pynges of the lypes or handes.

Item Deere suet is verie proper for the same
purpose, especially being wel washed and tempe-
red with Rose water, wherein hath ben dissolved
two or three graynes of pure Muske.

Against sodaine rising of pimple, through vn-
kinde heate in the face, or els where.

Take the white of an egge, and beate it well
with a spoone, and then therewith commixe
two spoonefulls of Salet oyle, one spoone-
ful of Rose water, another of the iuyce of So-
rel, and halfe a litle spoonefull of vineger, here-
with annoynt the ppymples and rysynges.

C To keepe and preserue the teeth cleane.

First if they be very yelow and filthie, or blac-
kythe, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and pycke
them cleane and whyte, then after to mayn-
teyne them cleane, it shalbe verie good to rubbe
them euery day with the roote of a Wallowe,
and to picke them cleane that no meate remayne
and putrisie betweene the teeth.

Item, take of the small white pybble stones
whiche be founde by the water sydes, and beate
them in very smal powder, herof take an ounce,
and of Masticke one dram, myngle them togea-
ther,

*For stopping of y^e quicke & vnholy
Take y^e roote of Trimalle & compaine daye & y^e quicke to powder
& mingle it with Rys water & take some of it & myngle it
to the other*

The fourth booke.

ther, and with this powder once in .xiiii. dayes
rub exactly your teeth, and this shall keepe your
teeth fayre and white, but beware ye touch not,
the bere the gummies therewithal.

Item, to stable and stedfast the teeth, and to keepe the gummes in good case, it shalbe verie good euery day in the moornyng, to washe well the mouth with red wine.

¶ Of stynkyng breath.

Stinch of the breath commeth eyther by occasion bzed in the mouth, or els in the stomack. If it come from the stomacke, then the body must be purged by the further aduice of a Physitian. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then moste commonly it commeth of some rotten and corrupted holowe teeth, which in this case must be plucked out, and the gummes wel scoured and washed with Vineger wherein hath ben sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanly kepyng of the teeth doth conferre muche to the sauerinelle of the mouth.

¶ Of the ranke favour of the arneholes.

THis vice in many persons is verie tedious and lothsome: the remedie whereof is, to poure fyre the cholericke and egre humours, originall causers of the same, and afterwarde to washe the arneholes oftentymes with the water wherin moorme hath ben sodden togeather with Camemel, and a litle quantitie of Alome.

Item,

...to make the ...

[illegible]

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxxi.

Item, Authoꝝ doo wyte, that the rootes
of Artichantes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in
whyte wyne & so drunke, dooth cleanse the stench
of the armeholes, and other partes of the bodye
by the bryne. For (as Galen also dooth testifie)
he prouoketh copie and plentye of stynkyng and
vnsauery bryne from all partes of the bodye,
the which propertie it hath by speciall gyft,
and not onely by his hotte qualitie. And
thus here I make an ende of
this fourth and
last booke.

FINIS.

1565.



As I thinke to take from me my leuyn wyte,
A 13. 14. why then should I be my selfe a fole fole
of her & as in blessed state.
The Tulle house the first house
And having lost his moulted skin
Goth molle with agayne.
The Tulle house the first house
And having lost his moulted skin
Goth molle with agayne.

1565

For all aposthemes & sores in old or young
ingest it be more or old.

Take .9. roots of smalts & lay them between 2 ~~thick~~ lye stones
or in an earthen pot covered & set in an oven until they be
dried to make in powder, then take the powder of one of the
smalts & put it in eight ounces & drinck it fasting, & for
2. passages after, & so drinck the .9. smalts only after
morning and. And if the patient be so old that it will not
scale in his drinck, then boyle to drinck after of smalts
as it is prescribed. Also take the roots of Compere & the
roots of drisies stamped & mixed wth meale of rye
& eggs & fasten it and eat it fasting, put to it the
roots of sponne drinck in 2. ounces & make in powder,
& drinck it wth rhenish & drisies in eight ounces, fasting
in May & for 2. weeks of sponne is best.

A aposthemes plaster for a apostheme.

Take old beames brimsted & set for in vinegar, as
if it be galled, & lay them by for 4. days & make powder of
them: then take the powder of sanguis draconis a quart
the free and no more of bole armoniac, & double of
the powder of beames & make it wth the wth of 2.
eggs & a little turpentine, & lay to a plaster for
the greif: put to it a drinck of beames.

An electuary for a apostheme.

Take rompore a pound, rougher of roses a quart of a pint
of darcengiant and some, & the powder of diaphanous
caloria of sage and some, water rousie, bole armoniac
lapis sanguinis of sage 2. drammes, paint gargarin
one pound, make first in electuary wth smalt water.

and
C
f
r
w
il
f
at
y
re,
ing

6
8
9
10
11
12

ing
a
ial
ini
2.